User Manual

SIGMA AIR MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 ≥ sam4.0_1.12.X

No.: 901735 10 USE



Manufacturer:

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN SE

96410 Coburg • PO Box 2143 • GERMANY • Tel. +49-(0)9561-6400 • Fax +49-(0)9561-640130

www.kaeser.com

/KKW/CSAM 2.10 en Z1 IBA-SAM40 /KKW/CSAM 2.10 Z1 20210709 055519





1	Rega	rding this	s Document
	1.1	Using th	nis document
	1.2	Copyrig	ht
	1.3	Approva	als
	1.4	Softwar	e
	1.5	License	d brands and trademarks
	1.6	Updatin	g the operating manual
	1.7	Symbol	s and labels
		1.7.1	Warnings
		172	Potential damage warnings
		173	Other alerts and their symbols
		1.7.0	
2	Tech	nical Data	a
	2.1	System	data
	2.2	Electrica	al Data
	2.3	Version	s and Options
	2.4	Compor	nents within the control cabinet
		2.4.1	I/O-Modules (SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 and SBU)
		2.4.2	Relay block
		2.4.3	8-port RJ45 switch
		2.4.4	4-port RJ45 – 1-port FOC switch
		2.4.5	Protocol converter SIGMA NETWORK/ PROFIBUS master
		2.4.6	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal
		247	Communication modules
	25	Control	cabinet
	2.6	Proseur	re transducer 1
	2.0	1100001	
3	Safet	y and Re	esponsibility
	3.1	Basic in	structions 2
	3.2	Specifie	ed use 2
	3.3	Imprope	er use 2
	3.4	User's F	Responsibilities 2
		3.4.1	Observe statutory and universally accepted regulations 2
		3.4.2	Qualified personnel
	3.5	Safety s	signs
	3.6	Dangers	s
		3.6.1	Safely handling potential sources of danger
		3.6.2	Safely operating the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0
	3.7	Warrant	tv
4	Desig	in and Fu	Inction
	4.1	Overvie	W 2
	4.2	Operati	ng panel 2
	4.3	Touch s	screen 2
	4.4	User log	g-in with RFID Equipment Card 2
	4.5	Menu st	tructure
	4.6	Operation	on and function 3
		4.6.1	3-D ^{advanced} Adaptive control
		4.6.2	Timer control
		4.6.3	Power limiting
		4.6.4	Air main charging
		4.6.5	Manual
		4.6.6	KAESER CONNECT
		467	KAESER IoT Client
		1.0.7	





5	Instal	lation an	d Operating Conditions			
	5.1	Environment				
	5.2	Installat	tion conditions	34		
		5.2.1	Operation in an industrial environment	34		
6	Instal	lation				
	6.1	Installat	tion	35		
	6.2	Ensurin	a safetv	36		
	6.3	Reporti	ng transport damage	36		
	64	Compre	essed air supply during installation	36		
	0.1	6 4 1	Compressed air station with compressed air generation in the Manual	36		
		0	operating mode			
		642	Compressed air station without compressed air generation in the Manual	37		
		0	operating mode	0.		
	65	Scope	operating measurements and the second s	37		
	6.6	Installin	o the control cabinet	37		
	67	Identify	ing the machines	39		
	6.8	Connec	ting the pressure transducer	40		
	0.0	6.8.1	Mechanical connection	40		
		682	Power Supply	42		
	69	Installin	n own cappy	43		
	6 10	Plannin	a the wiring	44		
	0.10	6 10 1	SIGMA NETWORK	44		
		6 10 2	PROFIBILS network	45		
		6 10 3	Floating contacts	46		
		6 10 4	Instructions on the electrical installation	47		
		6 10 5	Prerequisites and accessories required for connection with	47		
		0.10.0	SIGMA NETWORK	.,		
		6.10.6	Prerequisites and accessories connection with PROFIBUS	47		
		6.10.7	Prerequisites for connection via floating relay contacts	48		
	6.11	Wirina .	······································	49		
	••••	6.11.1	Creating the SIGMA NETWORK	49		
		6.11.2	Creating the PROFIBUS network	52		
		6.11.3	Creating the compressor station via floating relay contacts	53		
	6.12	Connec	ting lines	54		
		6.12.1	Wiring the control cabinet	54		
		6.12.2	Connecting the equipotential bonding	55		
		6.12.3	Feeding cables and connecting the shielding	55		
		6.12.4	Laving the cables in the control cabinet	57		
		6.12.5	Connecting the cables	57		
		6.12.6	Installing the control cabinet	58		
	6.13	Setting	up the machines	60		
		6.13.1	Integration with SIGMA NETWORK	61		
		6.13.2	Integration with PROFIBUS	61		
		6.13.3	Linking via floating relay contact	62		
-	1.90.1	01.1				
1	Initial	Start-up		~ 4		
	7.1	Commis	SSIONING – OVERVIEW	64		
	1.Z			04		
	1.3	Langua	ye	00		
	1.4		g-In	0/		
		1.4.1	Logging on with the REID Equipment Card	0/		
		1.4.2	User log out	68		
		1.4.3	User administration	68		
	1.5	import of	configuration	72		



	7.5.1	Switching on manual operation	72
	7.5.2	Insert the SD card.	73
	7.5.3	Importing the configuration file	73
	7.5.4	Activating automatic mode	74
7.6	Date ar	nd time	75
	7.6.1	Set the time zone	75
	7.6.2	Set the date	76
	7.6.3	Set the time	77
	764	Automatically update time	78
	765	Set display formats	79
77	l Inits		79
7.8	Key loc	k	80
7.0	Dieplay		81
7.9	Monub	obaviour	01 82
7.10			02
	7.10.1	Set default display	04
7 4 4	7.1U.Z		04
7.11	SAIVI 4.		85
	7.11.1	Serial data	85
	7.11.2	Measurement data	86
	7.11.3	X6 SIGMA NETWORK	86
	7.11.4	X7 Ethernet 1 Gb	87
7.12	E-mail.		88
	7.12.1	Send options	88
	7.12.2	General settings	90
	7.12.3	Test e-mail	91
	7.12.4	Alive message	91
	7.12.5	History	92
7.13	SIGMA	NETWORK I/O	93
	7.13.1	Starting the SBU	94
	7.13.2	I/O block	94
	7.13.3	I/O module	95
	7.13.4	I/O signals	96
7.14	PROFIE	BUS	98
	7.14.1	SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter	99
	7.14.2	PROFIBUS Slave	100
7.15	SIGMA	NETWORK	102
	7.15.1	Start the dryer or air-main charging system (DHS)	104
7.16	Control		105
	7.16.1	Constant pressure control	105
	7.16.2	Pressure monitoring	107
	7 16 3	Volume flow rate control	107
	7 16 4	Adapt pressure reg low pressure	109
	7 16 5	Advanced	110
	7 16 6		112
7 17	Timor o	Actual press. value	112
1.11	7 17 1		110
	7 17 0	Recurring task	114
	1.11.Z 7 17 0	Nouthing lask	11/
	1.11.3	Luil lash	110
	1.11.4 7 4 7 F	Delete lasks	119
	7.17.5		119
	1.11.6		120
-	1.11.1	Example	121
7.18	Data ba	аскир	127
7.19	Control	technology	129



		7.19.1	Activating remote control	130
	7.20	Activati	ng SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0	130
8	Oner	ation		
0	8 1	Calcula	ted values	132
	8.2	Switchi	ng on and off	132
	0.2	8 2 1	Switching the compressed air station on	132
		822	Activating automatic mode	132
		823	Activating automatic mode	132
		824	Activating timer control	133
		825	Switching off the compressed air station	133
	83	Help fu	nction	133
	0.0 8 /	Status		13/
	0.4	8 4 1		134
		8/2	Overview – Pressure display	134
		0.4.2 8 / 3	Overview - Current values	136
		0.4.0 8 <i>4 4</i>	Overview – History	138
		0. 1 . 1 8 4 5	Manual preselect	130
		0.4.J 8.4.6	Sources	1/1
		0.4.0 8 / 7	Station	1/6
		0.4.7 Q / Q	Color coding	140
	85	Soloctir	color county	140
	0.5	8 5 1	Serial and nower data	152
		852	Characteristic curves	152
		853	Control	154
		854	Hours counter	155
		855	Control (Control valves)	156
		856	Parameter (Control valves)	157
	86	Monitor	ing	158
	0.0	861	Compressed air consumption	159
		862	Specific nower	160
		863	Measurement data	161
		864	Export	165
	87	Energy	& costs	166
	0.1	8.7.1	Table	166
		872	Energy & Costs Report	168
		8.7.3	Diagram	169
		874	Period comparison	171
		875	Tariff configuration	172
		876	Renort	175
	8.8	KAESE	R CONNECT	178
	0.0	881	Opening KAESER CONNECT	178
		882		179
	89	Contact	t	179
_		_		
9	Fault	Recogni	ition and Rectification	
	9.1	KAESE	R SERVICE	180
	9.2	Messag	Jes	180
	9.3	Other fa	aults	182
10	Maint	enance		
	10.1	Mainter	nance tasks on electrical equipment	183
	10.2	Menu "I	Maintenance"	183
		10.2.1	Menu "Maintenance – Overview"	183
		10.2.2	Menu "Maintenance – History"	185
		10.2.3	Menu "Report"	188



	10.3	10.2.4 Softwar	Menu "Maintenance management"	189
	10.5	10 3 1	Switching on manual operation	101
		10.3.1	Insert the SD card	101
		10.3.2	Importing the undate file	192
		10.3.4	Activating automatic mode	192
	10.4	Changi	no the additional huffer battery	194
	10.4		Danger from batteries	194
		10.4.2	Buffer battery life	194
		10.4.3	Installing the additional buffer battery	195
11	Snare	s Oner	ating Materials, Service	
••	11 1	Note th	e nameplate	196
	11.2	Replace	ement parts for service and repair	196
	11.3	KAESE	R AIR SERVICE	209
	11.4	Display	ing the software version	209
40	Deee		ning Standard and Transact	
12			ning, Storage and Transport	210
	12.1	De-con	ווווגאוטווווץ	210
	IZ.Z		Pattony diapocal	210
		12.2.1		211
13	Anne	x		
	13.1	Dimens	ional drawing	212
	13.2	Equipm	ent and options	214
	13.3	SIGMA	AIR MANAGER 4.0 setting values	214
		13.3.1	Notes	215
		13.3.2	Software versions	216
		13.3.3	"Engineering Base" configuration	217
		13.3.4	Time and date	217
		13.3.5	Settings for the X7 Ethernet interface	218
		13.3.6	Pressure regulation settings	218
		13.3.7	Operating hours and maintenance intervals	219
	13.4	Machin	e settings	223
		13.4.1	Setting the pressure regulation (pressure controller in series with the SIGMA	223
		1342	Pressure range for manual operation	224
		1343	System offset for manual mode	226
	13.5	Installat	tion accessories	227
	13.6	Fxchan	ging the battery	229
	13.7	Flectric	al Diagram	230
	13.8		k 6DI & 6DOT & 4 All with relays	258
	13.9	Hub.		265
	13.10	Glossar	ν	265
			J	







Fig. 1	Interfaces at the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal	11
Fig. 2	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 – Standard design of a compressed air station	25
Fig. 3	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 operating panel	26
Fig. 4	Touchscreen menu	27
Fig. 5	User management with RFID	29
Fig. 6	KAESER CONNECT	33
Fia. 7	Data transmission SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 – KAESER data center	33
Fig. 8	Open the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 cover	38
Fig. 9	Removing the control cabinet cover	39
Fig. 10	Pressure transducer position	41
Fig. 11	Connecting the screening	42
Fig. 12	Remove the plastic cover	43
Fig. 12	Insert the communication module	43
Fig. 14	SIGMA NETWORK design	40
Fig. 15	Structure of a PROFIBUS network – SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 with Option E1: PROFIBUS	45
E: 40		40
Fig. 16	Structure of a PROFIBUS network – SBU with Option E1: PROFIBUS master	46
Fig. 17	Network structure with floating contacts	46
Fig. 18	Strip the insulation from the network cable	50
Fig. 19	Inserting the network cable wires	50
Fig. 20	Positioning the network cable	51
Fig. 21	Close the cover of the RJ45 connector	51
Fig. 22	Rotate the locking piece as far as the limit stop	51
Fig. 23	Connecting the PROFIBUS cable	52
Fig. 24	Installing the PROFIBUS plug	53
Fig. 25	Installing the terminating PROFIBUS plug	53
Fig. 26	Remove the wire jumper.	54
Fig. 27	Feeding cable and connecting the shielding	55
Fig. 28	Connecting the shielding	56
Fig. 29	Cable routing in the control cabinet	57
Fig. 30	ST plug with fiber optic cable	58
Fig. 31	Installing the control cabinet	59
Fig. 32	Remove cable insert knock-outs / Attach edge protection	60
Fig. 33	Keys on the operating nanel	65
Fig. 34		66
Fig. 35	REID Equipment Card	67
Fig. 36	REID reader	67
Fig. 37		68
Fig. 38		68
Fig. 20	Monu Licer administration Licer list	60
Fig. 39	Create new wearmany	71
FIG. 40		70
Fig. 41	Logged on	72
Fig. 42	Insert the SD card.	73
Fig. 43	Import configuration menu	74
Fig. 44	Date and time menu	75
Fig. 45	Set the time zone menu	76
Fig. 46	Set the date menu	77
Fig. 47	Set the time menu	77
Fig. 48	Units menu	80
Fig. 49	Key lock menu	81
Fig. 50	<i>Display</i> menu	82
Fig. 51	Menu behaviour menu	83
Fig. 52	Status display of the compressed air device in the header	83
Fig. 53	Serial data menu	85



Fig. 55 General settings menu Fig. 56 Alive message menu Fig. 57 Menu E-mail – History Fig. 58 I/O block overview (example with two I/O blocks) Fig. 59 I/O block menu Fig. 59 I/O block menu Fig. 60 Module configuration menu Fig. 61 Example: Signal configuration, analog input Fig. 62 PROFIBUS I/O overview menu Fig. 63 SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter menu Fig. 63 SNW/PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 64 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 65 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 66 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 67 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 68 Start dryer operation Fig. 69 Menu Control – Parameter Fig. 70 Menu: Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control	
Fig. 56 Alive message menu Fig. 57 Menu E-mail – History Fig. 58 I/O block overview (example with two I/O blocks) Fig. 59 I/O block menu Fig. 60 Module configuration menu Fig. 61 Example: Signal configuration, analog input Fig. 62 PROFIBUS I/O overview menu Fig. 63 SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter menu Fig. 64 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 65 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 66 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 67 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 68 Start dryer operation Fig. 69 Menu Control – Parameter Fig. 70 Menu: Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control	91 92 93 95 96 97 97 98 99 100
Fig. 57 Menu E-mail – History Fig. 58 I/O block overview (example with two I/O blocks) Fig. 59 I/O block menu Fig. 59 I/O block menu Fig. 60 Module configuration menu Fig. 61 Example: Signal configuration, analog input Fig. 62 PROFIBUS I/O overview menu Fig. 63 SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter menu Fig. 64 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 65 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 66 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 67 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 68 Start dryer operation Fig. 69 Menu Control – Parameter Fig. 70 Menu: Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control	
Fig. 58 I/O block overview (example with two I/O blocks) Fig. 59 I/O block menu Fig. 60 Module configuration menu Fig. 61 Example: Signal configuration, analog input Fig. 62 PROFIBUS I/O overview menu Fig. 63 SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter menu Fig. 64 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 65 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 66 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 67 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 68 Start dryer operation Fig. 69 Menu Control – Parameter Fig. 70 Menu: Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control	93 95 96 97 98 98 99 100
Fig. 59 I/O block menu Fig. 60 Module configuration menu Fig. 61 Example: Signal configuration, analog input Fig. 62 PROFIBUS I/O overview menu Fig. 63 SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter menu Fig. 64 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 65 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 66 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 67 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 68 Start dryer operation Fig. 69 Menu Control – Parameter Fig. 70 Menu: Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control	95 96 97 98 98 99 100 101
Fig. 60 Module configuration menu Fig. 61 Example: Signal configuration, analog input Fig. 62 PROFIBUS I/O overview menu Fig. 63 SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter menu Fig. 64 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 65 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 66 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 67 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 68 Start dryer operation Fig. 69 Menu Control – Parameter Fig. 70 Menu: Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control	96 97 98 98 99 100 101 101 102 103
Fig. 61 Example: Signal configuration, analog input Fig. 62 PROFIBUS I/O overview menu Fig. 63 SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter menu Fig. 64 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 65 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 66 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 67 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 68 Start dryer operation Fig. 69 Menu Control – Parameter Fig. 70 Menu: Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control	97 98 99 100 101 101 102 103
Fig. 62 PROFIBUS I/O overview menu Fig. 63 SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter menu Fig. 64 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 65 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 66 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 67 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 68 Start dryer operation Fig. 69 Menu Control – Parameter Fig. 70 Menu: Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control	98 99 100 101
Fig. 63 SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter menu Fig. 64 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 65 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 66 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 67 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 68 Start dryer operation Fig. 69 Menu Control – Parameter Fig. 70 Menu: Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control	99
Fig. 64 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 65 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 66 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 67 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 68 Start dryer operation Fig. 69 Menu Control – Parameter Fig. 70 Menu: Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control	
Fig. 65 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20 Fig. 66 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 67 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 68 Start dryer operation Fig. 69 Menu Control – Parameter Fig. 70 Menu: Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control	101 102 103
Fig. 66 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 67 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 68 Start dryer operation Fig. 69 Menu Control – Parameter Fig. 70 Menu: Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control	102 103
Fig. 67 SIGMA NETWORK menu Fig. 68 Start dryer operation Fig. 69 Menu Control – Parameter Fig. 70 Menu: Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control	103
 Fig. 68 Start dryer operation Fig. 69 Menu <i>Control – Parameter</i> Fig. 70 Menu: <i>Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control</i> 	
Fig. 69 Menu <i>Control – Parameter</i> Fig. 70 Menu: <i>Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control</i>	
Fig. 70 Menu: Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control	
Fig. 71 Menu Control – Adapt. pressure reglow pressure	109
Fig. 72 Menu: Control – Parameter – Advanced	111
Fig. 72 Mond. Control – Actual press value	112
Fig. 74 Timer control menu	113
Fig. 75 Menu: Timer control – Task – Parameter	114
Fig. 76 Menu: Timer control – Task – Signal configuration	115
Fig. 77 Menu: Timer control – Task – Overview	
Fig. 78 Menu: Timer control – Task – Overview	
Fig. 70 Timer control menu	
Fig. 20 Mapy Timer control Timeline	110
Fig. 80 Menu <i>Timer control – Timerine</i>	
Fig. 01 Set the date menu	120
Fig. 82 Task: Compressed all OFF weekdays	122
Fig. 83 Serial lask menu for the task Compressed all OFF weekdays	123
Fig. 84 Task: Compressed air OFF weekends	
Fig. 85 Series task menu for the Compressed air OFF weekends task	
Fig. 86 <i>Timer control</i> menu with the two tasks	
Fig. 87 <i>Timeline</i> menu with the task "Compressed air OFF weekdays"	
Fig. 88 <i>Timeline</i> menu with the task "Compressed air OFF weekends"	127
Fig. 90 <i>Control technology</i> menu – Modbus TCP as a sample communications module	129
Fig. 91 Keys on the operating panel	
Fig. 92 <i>Pressure curve</i> menu	135
Fig. 93 Pressure display menu	
Fig. 94 <i>Current values</i> menu	137
Fig. 95 <i>History</i> menu	138
Fig. 96 Manual preselect menu	140
Fig. 97 <i>Pressure and power</i> menu	142
Fig. 98 Preselect menu	143
Fig. 99 Priorities menu	144
Fig. 100 Control valves menu	145
Fig. 101 Station menu	146
Fig. 102 Machine details	147
Fig. 103 Colored lines and bars in the compressor status graphs diagram	150
Fig. 104 Device selection list	151
Fig. 105 Device class	151
Fig. 106 Serial and power data menu	152
Fig. 107 Characteristic curves menu	





Fig. 108	Control menu	154
Fig. 109	Hours counter menu	155
Fig. 110	Control menu	157
Fig. 111	Parameter menu	158
Fig. 112	Menu Monitoring – Compressed air consumption	159
Fig. 113	Menu Monitoring – Specific power	160
Fig. 114	Menu: Monitoring – Measurement data – Diagram	162
Fig. 115	Menu: Monitoring – Measurement data – Setting analogue	163
Fig. 116	Set value menu	163
Fig. 117	Set color menu	164
Fig. 118	Menu <i>Monitoring – Export</i>	165
Fig. 119	Menu Energy & costs – Table	167
Fig. 120	Menu: Energy & costs – Table – Export	168
Fig. 121	Menu Energy & costs – Diagram	170
Fig. 122	Menu Energy & costs – Period comparison	171
Fig. 123	Menu Energy & costs – Tariff configuration	173
Fig. 124	Menu: Energy & costs – Tariff configuration – Tariff validity	174
Fig. 125	Set the tariff period menu	174
Fig. 126	Menu Report – Send options	176
Fig. 127	Menu Report – General settings	177
Fig. 128	KAESER CONNECT	178
Fig. 129	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 Log-in	178
Fig. 130	Contact menu	179
Fig. 131	Message Unacknowledged message(s) present	180
Fig. 132	Menu Messages – Unacknowledged	181
Fig. 133	Menu Maintenance – Overview for the entire station	184
Fig. 134	Menu Maintenance – Overview – for the selected machine	185
Fig. 135	Menu Maintenance – History – Current for the selected machine	186
Fig. 136	Menu Maintenance – History – Compressor for the selected machine	187
Fig. 137	Menu Maintenance – History – System for the selected machine	187
Fig. 138	Menu Maintenance – History – Diagnosis for the selected machine	188
Fig. 139		189
Fig. 140		190
Fig. 141	Insert the SD card.	192
Fig. 142	Software update menu	192
Fig. 143	Buffer battery location	195
Fig. 144	Buffer battery positions	210
Fig. 145	Battery disposal	211





Tab. 1	Danger levels and their definitions (personal injury)	3
Tab. 2	Danger levels and their definition (damage to property)	3
Tab. 3	System data	5
Tab. 4	Electrical Data	5
Tab. 5	Versions and options	6
Tab. 6	Technical data, all I/O modules	7
Tab. 7	Technical data, I/O-block and individual modules	7
Tab. 8	Relay block specifications	. 8
Tab. 9	Switch specifications	9
Tab 10	FOC switch specifications	10
Tab. 10	Data SNW/DP bus controller	10
Tab. 11	Interfaces SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0	12
Tab. 12	REID	12
Tab. 10	Display data	12
Tab. 14	Technical specifications - PROFIBIIS	13
Tab. 15	Assignment of PROFIBILS interface	13
Tab. 10	Technical Specifications - SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 interface	1/
Tab. 17	Assignment of the SIGMA AIP MANAGER 4.0 interface	14
Tab. 10	Technical data Modbus TCP interface	14
Tab. 19	Configuration of the Medhus TCP interface	15
Tab. 20	Modely TCD interface recommended conductors	15
Tab. 21	Technicel Specifications - SIGMA AID MANACED 4.0 interface	10
Tab. 22	Assignment of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 Interface	10
Tab. 23	Assignment of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 Interface	10
Tab. 24	Recommended conductors - SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 Interface	16
Tab. 25		17
Tab. 26	Configuration of the EtherNet/IP-Interface	17
Tab. 27	EtherNet/IP-Interface - Cabling recommendation	17
Tab. 28	Control cabinet data	18
Tab. 29	Models I and II pressure transducers	18
Tab. 30	Models III and vacuum pressure transducers	18
Tab. 31	Safety signs	21
Tab. 32	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 operating panel	26
Tab. 33	Touchscreen menu elements	27
Tab. 34	Menu structure	30
Tab. 35	Ambient temperatures	34
Tab. 36	Storage temperatures	34
Tab. 37	Installation	35
Tab. 38	Scope of delivery	37
Tab. 39	Maximum cable lengths	47
Tab. 40	Required equipment	48
Tab. 41	Parameter for bus alarm	61
Tab. 42	Commissioning – overview	64
Tab. 43	Keys on the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 operating panel	65
Tab. 44	Menu User administration – User list	69
Tab. 45	Edit selected user	70
Tab. 46	Meaning of the menu elements Set the time zone	76
Tab. 47	Meaning of the Set the date menu elements	77
Tab. 48	Meaning of the menu elements Set the time	78
Tab. 49	Setting the <i>Time format</i>	79
Tab. 50	Setting the Date format	79
Tab. 51	Units	80
Tab. 52	Display	82
Tab. 53	Meaning of symbols in the header	83
Tab. 54	Serial data menu	86





Tab. 55	Measurement data menu	86
Tab. 56	X6 SIGMA NETWORK menu	87
Tab. 57	X7 Ethernet 1 Gb menu	87
Tab. 58	Menu <i>E-mail – Send options</i>	89
Tab. 59	Menu <i>E-mail – General settings</i>	90
Tab. 60	Menu <i>E-mail – Alive message</i>	92
Tab. 61	Menu <i>E-mail – History</i>	92
Tab. 62	Meaning of the menu elements I/O block overview	93
Tab. 63	Meaning of the menu elements I/O block	95
Tab. 64	Meaning of the <i>Module configuration</i> menu elements	96
Tab. 65	Meaning of the menu elements I/O signals	97
Tab. 66	Meaning of the PROFIBUS I/O overview menu elements	98
Tab. 67	Meaning of the menu elements SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter	99
Tab. 68	Meaning of the menu elements PROFIBUS Slave	101
Tab. 69	Meaning of the <i>I/O signals</i> menu elements	101
Tab. 70	Meaning of the SIGMA NETWORK menu elements - overview	103
Tab. 71	Meaning of the SIGMA NETWORK menu elements - controller	103
Tab 72	Parameters in the Constant pressure control menu	106
Tab 73	Parameters in the <i>Pressure monitoring</i> menu	107
Tab. 70 Tab. 74	Meaning of the menu elements in the Volume flow rate control menu	108
Tab. 74 Tab. 75	Parameters in the Adapt, pressure reg -low pressure menu	110
Tab. 76	Meaning of the menu elements in the <i>Advanced</i> menu	111
Tab. 70 Tab. 77	Parameters in the Actual press value menu	112
Tab. 77	Meaning of the <i>Timer control</i> – <i>Task</i> – <i>Parameter</i> menu elements	114
Tab. 70 Tab. 70	Meaning of the Timer control – Task – Signal configuration menu elements	115
Tab. 73	Meaning of the manu elements <i>Timeline</i>	110
Tab. 00	Meaning of the many elements Set the date	120
Tab. 01 Tab. 82	Meaning of the Data backun monu elements	120
Tab. 02 Tab. 02	"Commissioning" check list	120
Tab. 03	Meaning of the symbols in the Manual preselect menu	140
Tab. 04	Meaning of the <i>Breesure and neuror</i> monut	140
Tab. 00	Meaning of the <i>Pressure and power</i> menu	142
Tab. 00	Meaning of the <i>Preselect</i> menu	143
Tab. 07	Meaning of the Control values many	144
Tab. 00	Reaning of the <i>Control valves</i> menu	140
Tab. 69	Par symbol for a compressor in different operating states	147
Tab. 90	Weaning of the color codes	148
Tab. 91	illustration of the operating states of compressed air generators	149
Tab. 92	lilustration of the operating states of the station	149
Tab. 93	Icon in the P&I diagram	150
Tab. 94	Meaning of the menu elements in the Serial and power data menu	152
Tab. 95	Meaning of the menu elements in the <i>Control</i> menu	155
Tab. 96	Meaning of the menu elements in the <i>Hours counter</i> menu	155
Tab. 97	Meaning of the menu elements in the <i>Control</i> menu	157
Tab. 98	Meaning of the menu elements in the <i>Parameter</i> menu	158
Tab. 99	Meaning of the menu <i>Monitoring – Compressed air consumption</i>	159
Tab. 100	Meaning of the menu <i>Monitoring – Specific power</i>	160
1 ab. 101	Ivieaning of the <i>Monitoring – Measurement data – Diagram</i>	162
1 ab. 102	weaning of the Setting analogue or Setting digital menu elements	163
Tab. 103	Meaning of the <i>Export</i> menu elements	165
1 ab. 104	Meaning of the menu elements <i>Energy & costs – Table</i>	167
Tab. 105	Meaning of the menu elements <i>Export</i>	169
Tab. 106	Meaning of the menu elements <i>Energy & costs – Diagram</i>	170
Tab. 107	Meaning of the menu elements <i>Energy & costs – Period comparison</i>	172
1ab. 108	Meaning of the menu elements <i>Energy & costs – Tariff configuration – Tariff costs</i>	173



Tab. 109	Meaning of the menu elements <i>Energy & costs – Tariff configuration – Tariff validity</i>	174
Tab. 110	Meaning of the menu elements Set the tariff period	175
Tab. 111	Meaning of the menu elements Send options	176
Tab. 112	Meaning of the menu elements General settings	177
Tab. 113	Meaning of the menu elements Unacknowledged message(s) present	180
Tab. 114	Other faults	182
Tab. 115	Meaning of the menu elements in menu Maintenance - Overview	183
Tab. 116	Meaning of the menu elements in menu Maintenance – History	185
Tab. 117	Meaning of the menu elements in menu Report - Overview	189
Tab. 118	Meaning of the menu elements in menu Maintenance – Maintenance management	190
Tab. 119	Replacement buffer battery	196
Tab. 120	Equipment and options	214
Tab. 121	Notes for changes/settings	215
Tab. 122	Software versions	216
Tab. 123	"Engineering Base" configuration	217
Tab. 124	Time and date	217
Tab. 125	Settings for the X7 Ethernet interface	218
Tab. 126	Pressure parameters	218
Tab. 127	System parameters	218
Tab. 128	Operating hours and maintenance intervals	219
Tab. 129	Recommended settings: Pressure controller in series with SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0	223
	"external load control" load output	
Tab. 130	Recommended settings: Pressure controller in series with the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0	224
	"Man/Auto and Load/Idle" load output	
Tab. 131	Personal settings: Pressure controller in series with SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 load output	224
Tab. 132	Recommended settings: Pressure range for manual operation	225
Tab. 133	Personal settings: Pressure range for manual operation	226
Tab. 134	Personal settings: System offset (manual operation)	226
Tab. 135	Communication modules	227
Tab. 136	SIGMA NETWORK installation accessories	227
Tab. 137	Pressure transducer	228
Tab. 138	Pressure transducer accessories	228
Tab. 139	PROFIBUS installation accessories	229
Tab. 140	Load/idle modules	229
Tab. 141	RC suppressor	229
Tab. 142	Changing the battery	229
Tab. 143	Sample entry in assignment table I/O block with relays	259
Tab. 144	Assignment I/O block – Module 1: X1 DI1.x – 20DI6371 – 6x DI 24VDC	260
Tab. 145	Assignment I/O block – Module 2: X2 DOT2.x – X20DO6322 – 6x relays	261
Tab. 146	Assignment I/O block Modules 3 & 4 – X3 & X4 All3.x – X20Al4632-1 – 4x All 0-22mA 16Bit & X20PD2113	264
Tab. 147	Switch allocation	265
Tab. 148	Switch allocation	265
Tab. 149	Glossary	265







1 Regarding this Document

1.1 Using this document

The operating manual contains important information to the entire life cycle of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.

The operating manual is a component of the product.

- ► Keep the manual in a safe place throughout the life of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.
- > Pass the manual on to the next owner or user of the equipment.
- > Ensure that any amendments received are inserted in the manual.
- The images shown are only examples. Menus or functions may be shown that are not available in the specific product or will be introduced at a later time only.

1.2 Copyright

This operator manual is copyright protected. Queries regarding use or duplication of the documentation should be referred to KAESER. Correct use of information will be fully supported.

1.3 Approvals

This product has the following approvals:

- This product is MIC approved. The approval number is: AC-14084. The radio waves used for this product may affect medical devices such as pacemakers.
- This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
 - Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
 - Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
 - Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
 - Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.
- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. The operation is subject to the following two conditions:
 - This device may not cause harmful interference, and
 - this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- This device fulfils the provisions of the Industry Canada Licence, with the exception of the RSS rules. The operation is subject to the following two conditions:
 - This device may not cause harmful interference, and
 - this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



Software

In order to ensure permanent compliance with the FCC rules, unless explicitly approved by the authority responsible for compliance with the provisions, no changes must be carried out (for example: when connecting to computers or peripheral equipment use shielded cables only).

1.4 Software

The software used in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 contains copyright-protected software which is licensed by GNU General Public License in versions 2 and 3. A copy of these licenses can be found in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0. Display the licenses by pointing your browser to the "COPY-ING" file in the root directory of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.

URL: http://<Hostname SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 >/COPYING The licenses can also be found under this address:

The licenses can also be found under this address

http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gpl-2.0.txt

http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gpl.txt

Within three years from receipt of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0, you may obtain the complete source code of the copyright-protected software packages by sending a corresponding order to the following address:

Technisches Büro Elektrokonstruktion KAESER KOMPRESSOREN SE 96450 Coburg, Postfach 2143 Germany.

1.5 Licensed brands and trademarks

All licensed brands and trademarks and brands and trademarks licensed to third parties mentioned in this service manual are subject without restriction to the legislation for the brand and trademark rights concerned and the ownership rights of the licensed owner in each case. The mere mention of a trademark alone does not allow the conclusion to be drawn that a trademark is not protected by the rights of a third party.

1.6 Updating the operating manual

Go to our website <u>http://www.kaeser.com/int-en/manuals/response.aspx</u> to find the latest version of this manual. We recommend downloading the manual, for example when software updates are released, to ensure familiarity with new or upgraded functions.



When you open the *Contact* menu via KAESER CONNECT, a link to our <u>website</u> is displayed. See chapter 8.9.

> Download the desired operating manual from our server and forward it to your operators.

1.7 Symbols and labels

> Please note the symbols and labels used in this document.

1.7.1 Warnings

Warning notices indicate dangers that may result in injury when disregarded.



Regarding this Document

7 Symbols and labels

Warning notices indicate three levels of danger identified by the corresponding signal word:

Signal term	Meaning	Consequences of ignoring the warning
DANGER	Warns of an imminent danger	Will result in death or severe injury
WARNING	Warns of a potentially imminent danger	May result in death or severe injury
CAUTION	Warns of a potentially dangerous situation	May result in a moderate physical injury

Tab. 1 Danger levels and their definitions (personal injury)

Warning notices preceding a chapter apply to the entire chapter, including all sub-sections. Example:

A DANGER

These show the kind of danger and its source. The possible consequences of ignoring a warning are shown here. If you ignore the warning notice, the "WARNING" signal word indicates a lethal or severe injury will occur.

> The measures required to protect yourself from danger are shown here.

Warning notes referring to a sub-section or the subsequent action are integrated into the procedure and numbered as an action.

Example:

- 1. A WARNING These show the kind of danger and its source. The possible consequences of ignoring a warning are shown here. If you ignore the warning notice, the "WARNING" signal word indicates that a lethal or severe injury may occur.
 - > The measures required to protect yourself from danger are shown here.
- 2. Always read and comply with warning instructions.

1.7.2 Potential damage warnings

Unlike the warnings shown above, damage warnings do not indicate a potential personal injury.

Warning notices for damages are identified by their signal term.

Signal term	Meaning	Consequences of ignoring the warning
NOTE	Warns of a potentially dangerous situation	Damage to property is possible

Tab. 2 Danger levels and their definition (damage to property)

Example:

NOTICE

These show the kind of danger and its source.

Potential effects when ignoring the warning are indicated here.

- The protective measures against the damages are shown here.
- Carefully read and fully comply with warnings against damages.



Symbols and labels

1.7.3 Other alerts and their symbols



1.7

This symbol identifies particularly important information.

Material Here you will find details on special tools, operating materials, or spare parts.

Precondition

 Here you will find conditional requirements necessary to carry out the task. The conditions relevant to safety shown here will help you to avoid dangerous situations.
 This symbol denotes lists of actions comprising one stage of a task.

 Instructions with several steps are numbered in the sequence of the operating steps.

 Information referring to potential problems is identified by a question mark.



The cause is named in the help text as is a solution.

This symbol identifies important information or measures concerning environmental protection.

Further information Further topics are introduced here.



2 Technical Data

2.1 System data

> Enter the system data of this product in the following table.

System data	Value
Part number	
Serial number	

Tab. 3 System data

 \cap

The part number and serial number is provided on the nameplate.

2.2 Electrical Data

Model	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 – 100-240 V AC	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 – 24 V DC
Power supply	Single-phase, L1/N, N grounded	_
Rated voltage [V]	100–240, 50–60 Hz	24
Rated current [A]	1.25-0.65	2.5
User fuses [A]	10/13/16	Max. 4
Power supply cable core cross-section [AWG]	3x16	
Equipotential bond connection [AWG]	1x16	
Enclosure protection	IP54 (IEC 529)	
Buffer battery		
Buffer battery [V]/[Ah]	3/0.12	
Life of buffer battery without power supply [years]	3	
Life of buffer battery with power supply [years]	10	

Tab. 4 Electrical Data

<u>]</u>

2.3 Versions and Options

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is available in different variants and options:

- In principle, every input and output is freely assignable.
- The number of inputs and outputs can be increased using SBU (see chapter 4).
- Details on assignable and assigned inputs and outputs can be found in the circuit diagrams in the annex.



2 2.3

Versions and Options

Туре	SAM 4.0-4	SAM 4.0-8	SAM 4.0-16
Basic configuration			
Digital inputs (DI) for floating relay signals.		6	
Floating digital output relays (DOR) (as changeover contact, 230 V, 3 A)		5	
Analog inputs (AII) 0(4)-20 mA		4	
Free Ports: SIGMA NETWORK(Option: Ports)	1x E10: 7, 2x E10: 13, 1x E12: 4, E10 + E12: 10, 2x E12: 7		
Sequenced machines			
Maximum	4	8	16
Via SIGMA NETWORK directly to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0	47)	80)	13 2)3)
I/O directly to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0	4		
Options			
E1: PROFIBUS-Master ¹⁾	Complete SAM	/I PROFIBUS n connected	etwork can be
E9: Network Section Control	Netw	ork Section Co	ontrol
E10: RJ45 ports: SIGMA NETWORK	1x E10 7, 2x E10 13 ⁴⁾		
E12: RJ45/FOC ports: SIGMA NETWORK	1x E12 3/1, 2x E12 5/2 ⁴⁾ , E10+E12 9/1 ⁴⁾		
E19: Single-mode FOC	Standard: Multimode, E19: Single mode		
E20: I/O block 6DI&6DOT&4AII	Available		
C41:PROFIBUS DP 5)	PROFIBUS DP communication module		
C42: Modbus RTU ⁵⁾	Modbus RTU communication module		
C44: Modbus TCP ⁵⁾	Modbus TCP communication module		
C45: PROFINET IO 5)	PROFINET IO communication module		
C50: EtherNet/IP ⁵⁾	EtherNet/IP communication module		
0 With Ortion 2 E10 or E10 + E10			

 $^{0)}$ With Option 2x E10 or E10 + E12

¹⁾ PROFIBUS master only once (SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU)

²⁾ With Option 2x E10: 13 ports: SIGMA NETWORK

- ³⁾ Expandable to 16 with SBU, see chapter 4
- ⁴⁾ Except for Option E1
- ⁵⁾ Only one communication module possible
- ⁷⁾ Except for Option 1x E12

Tab. 5 Versions and options



Enter the current technical equipment, built-in options, retrofits and other technical modifications for this device in the table in the annex (chapter 13.2).



2.4 Components within the control cabinet

2.4.1 I/O-Modules (SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 and SBU)

The following technical data apply to the I/O block and the individual I/O modules used in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 and SBU:

- I/O block 6DI&6DOT&4AII
- Module 6DI X20DI6371
- Module 6DOT X20DO6322
- Module 4All X20Al4632-1

Technical data, all I/O modules

Feature	Value	
Connection terminals	Push-in terminal	
Connection cross-section	Copper wires	
 Wire/single-core [AWG] 	 AWG 28-14 	
 Flex/fine-core [AWG] 	 AWG 24-14 	
 Wire end ferrule [AWG] 	 AWG 24-16 	
 Double wire-end ferrule [AWG] 	2x AWG 24-18	
Display elements	Status LEDs	

Tab. 6 Technical data, all I/O modules

Technical data, I/O-block and individual modules

Feature	Value
Bus Controller	X20BC0087-C01
Bus	KAESER SIGMA NETWORK
Transfer rate [MBit/s]	10/100
Characteristics	Auto crossing (Auto-MDI(X)), Auto negotiation
Connections	2 x -socket RJ45: SIGMA NETWORK, RJ45, 10/100Base-TX
Max. length of the line between SIGMA NETWORK two components [ft.]	328
Potential isolation SIGMA NETWORK I/O-mod- ule	Yes
24 V DC power supply	X20PS9400
Power supply [V DC], [A]	24 (-15% / +20%), max. 0.7
Potential isolation	—
 Supply - internal bus 	■ Yes
Supply - I/O module	■ No
Digital inputs (DI)	Module 6DI – X20DI6371
Input voltage [V DC]	24
Model Input current at 24 V DC [mA]	3.75
Switching threshold [V DC]	Low <5 , High >15



2 2.4

Components within the control cabinet

Digital inputs (DI)	Module 6DI – X20DI6371
Insulation voltage between channel and bus $[V_{\text{eff}}]$	500
Digital outputs (DOT)	Module 6DOT – X20DO6322
Output voltage [V DC]	24
Output current per output maximum (high volt- age and short-circuit proof) [A]	0.5
Output protection	Thermal shut-down at high voltage or short-cir- cuit, integrated protection for switching inductive loads
Insulation voltage between channel and bus $\left[V_{\text{eff}}\right]$	500
Analogue Inputs (All)	Module 4All – X20Al4632-1
Measuring range [mA]	0-20
Resolution [bit]	15
Connection type	Active and passive possible (2 conductor and 4 conductor technology)
Ohmic resistance (internal) [Ohm]	< 400
Input protection	Protection against supply voltage wiring
Maximum error in 77°F range from current measured value [%]	0.08
Maximum error in 77°F - offset from final value of measuring range [%]	0.02
Distribution 24 VDC	Module 6x 24 VDC - X20PD2113
Rated output voltage [V DC]	24
Output current, total [A]	6.0
Fusing (internal, replaceable) [A], [in.]	T6.3, 5x20mm (0.8 in.)

Tab. 7 Technical data, I/O-block and individual modules

2.4.2 Relay block

The relay block comprises of 5 relays (SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0) or 6 relays (SBU) with the following technical specifications:

Feature	Value	
Connection terminals	Push-in terminal	Screw terminal
Connection cross-section	Copper wires	Copper wires
 Wire/single-core [AWG] Breid/fine_core [AWG] 	 0.14-1.5 / AWG 24-16 0.14 1 5 / AWG 24 16 	 0.5-4 / AWG 20-12 0.5.2 E / AWG 20.14
 Braid/line-core [AWG] Wire ferrule [AWG] 	 0.14-1.5 / AWG 24-16 0.14-1.5 / AWG 24-16 	 0.5-2.5 / AWG 20-14 0.5-1.5 / AWG 20-16
 Double wire ferrule 	 Not possible 	■ 0.5-1.0
Stripping length [in]	0.31	0.28
Tightening torque		0.5–0.6 Nm / 4.4–5.3 lb-in
Indicator elements	Status LED	



2.4 Components within the control cabinet

Feature	Value
Coil voltage [V DC]	24
 Output contact Max. switching voltage [V AC/DC] Min. switching voltage [V AC/DC] Min. switching current [mA] Max. continuous current [A] Switching capacity IEC 60947 / DIN VDE 0660 24 V DC13 [A] 230 V AC15 [A] 	1 changeover contact 250 5 (at 100 mA) 10 (at 12 V) 6 <u>-</u> 1 3
Inductive loads (e.g. auxiliary contactor, solenoid valve)	Connect to RC element
Rated isolation voltage [V AC]	250

Tab. 8 Relay block specifications

2.4.3 8-port RJ45 switch

Feature	Value
RJ45 ports: SIGMA NETWORK	8
Transfer rate [Mbps]	10/100
Transfer mode	Store-and-forward switching mode
Characteristics	Auto crossing (Auto-MDI(X)), Auto negotiation, Auto sensing
Connections	RJ45, 10/100Base-TX
Max. cable length between two SIGMA NETWORK components [ft]	328
Power supply [V DC]	9–48, @ 24 V DC/200 mA
Display elements	Status LEDs for voltage and each port

Tab. 9 Switch specifications



2.4 Components within the control cabinet

2.4.4 4-port RJ45 – 1-port FOC switch

Feature		Value
RJ45 port: SIGMA NETWORK		4
	Transfer rate [Mbps]	10/100
	Characteristics	Auto crossing (Auto-MDI(X)), Auto negotiation, Auto sensing
	Connections	RJ45, 10/100Base-TX
	Max. cable length between two SIGMA NETWORK compo- nents [ft]	328
Ports: FOC ¹⁾ :		1
SIGMA NETWORK	Transfer rate [Mbps]	100
	Fiber type	Multimode
		E19: Single mode
	Туре	G50/125, G62.5/125
		E19: E9/125
	Cable dimensions, core/clad- ding	62.5/125 μm
	Wavelength	1270 – 1360 nm
	Connections	2 x ST (BFOC)
		E19: 2 x SC
		100Base-FX
	Max. cable length between two	9842
		E19: 32808
Transfer mode		Store-and-forward switching mode
Power supply [V DC]		9-30, @ 24 V DC/300 mA
Indicator elements		Status LEDs for voltage and each port
¹⁾ FOC: Fiber-optic cable		

Tab. 10 FOC switch specifications

2.4.5 Protocol converter SIGMA NETWORK/ PROFIBUS master

Feature	Value
SIGMA NETWORK	—
 Transfer rate 	10/100
Properties 1	 Auto crossing
 Properties 2 	 Auto negotiation
 Max. conduit length between two compo- nents [ft.] 	■ 325



2.4 Components within the control cabinet

Feature	Value	
PROFIBUS DP	Master	
 Transfer rate [kBit/s] 	■ 187.5	
■ Interface	 RS486 floating 	
 Connections 	9-pole SUB-D socket	
 Max. conduit length for the entire bus length [ft.] 	■ 2625	
Power supply [V DC]	24 +/-25 %, typ. @ 130 mA	
Display elements	Status LED	
Service interfaces	Mini USB, slot for MMC memory card, rotary switch	

Tab. 11 Data, SNW/DP bus controller

2.4.6 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal

2.4.6.1 Industrial computer

- Industrial computer with Quad core processor
- 2 GB RAM
- 16 GB flash memory
- Buffer battery for real-time clock
- Voltage and temperature monitoring
- Updateable via SD Card

2.4.6.2 Interfaces

The positions of the interfaces X1–X5 are marked on the rear of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal.



Fig. 1 Interfaces at the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal



2.4 Components within the control cabinet

Marking	Interface	Connection
X1	Com-Module 1)	Slot for KAESER communication modules
X2	Battery ²⁾	For additional buffer battery
X3	SD Card	Slot for SD/SDHC/SDXC memory card
X4	USB2.0 ¹⁾	For service purposes only
X5	USB3.0 ¹⁾	For service purposes only
X6	SIGMA NETWORK	RJ485 socket (10/100Base T)
X7	Ethernet 1Gb	RJ45 socket (1000Base T)
X8	24 V DC Class 2 32VA	Power supply, protected against polarity reversal
Х9	FE (functional earth(ground))	Equipotential bonding 6.3 mm (0.25 in.) flat plug

¹⁾ Slot/interface covered: Remove the cover if a communication module is installed.

²⁾ Slit covered: Remove the cover if an additional buffer battery is installed (see chapter 10.4).

Tab. 12 Interfaces SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0

Identification with RFID Equipment Card

Feature	Value
Integrated hardware	RFID reader
Hardware (external)	RFID Equipment Card
Recognition in maximal distance [in.]	2
Frequency [MHz]	13.56
Emitted maximum transmitting power at 10 m (33 ft) distance [dB(µA/m)]	11

Tab. 13 RFID



The RFID read/write device transmits at a frequency of 13.56 MHz and is permitted for use in EU member states.

2.4.6.3 Display

Feature	Value
Display model	Color display with touch screen
Display resolution [px ¹⁾]	1280 x 800
Format	12,1"; 16:10
Background lighting	LED
Model	LCD; industrial version
Touch operation	Capacitive
¹⁾ px ≙ Pixel	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·



Feature	Value
Sensor keys	4
¹⁾ px ≙ Pixel	

Tab. 14 Display data

2

2.4.6.4 Software

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal:

- Operating system: Linux
- KAESER controller software
- KAESER user interface

2.4.7 Communication modules

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 supports the following communication modules:

- PROFIBUS DP (option C41)
- Modbus RTU (option C42)
- Modbus TCP (option C44)
- PROFINET IO (option C45)
- EtherNet/IP (option C50)

2.4.7.1 PROFIBUS module

Communications module

Feature	Value				
Controller	SIGMA CONTROL 2 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0				
Bus	PROFIBUS DP-V0 Slave, RS485				
GSD file	KAES0CEC.gsd KAKO0EFB.gsd				
Baud rate	Automatic recognition, possible baud rates: [kbps]: 9.6/19.2/45.45/93.75/187.5/ 500 [Mbps]: 1.5/3/6/12				
Input data	64 byte				
Output data	128 byte				
Diagnostic data	31 byte —				
Data content, see	"Technical description SIGMA CONTROL 2 process im- age", document number 7_7601_PA.	"Technical description SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 process im- age", document number 7_9696_PA.			

Tab. 15 Technical specifications - PROFIBUS

Assignment of PROFIBUS interface (Sub-D port, 9 poles, screw locking)

Pin	Signal	Description
1, 2, 7, 9	_	
3	В	RxD/TxD positive, RS485 Level



Pin	Signal	Description
4	RTS	Send request
5	GND	- for terminator, data delivery (isolated)
6	VP	+5 V for terminating resistor (isolated, short-circuit proof, max. 10 mA)
8	А	RxD/TxD negative, RS485 Level
Enclosure	Cable shield	Compliant with PROFIBUS standard, connected internally via filter to function ground (FE)

Tab. 16 Assignment of PROFIBUS interface

2.4.7.2 Modbus module

2

Communications module

Characteristic	Value			
Controller	SIGMA CONTROL 2 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0			
Bus	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or ASCII	, RS485 or RS232, galvanically isolated		
Baud rate [bps]	Adjustable, possible baud rates: 1200 / 2400 / 4800 / 9600 / 19200 / 3	Adjustable, possible baud rates: 1200 / 2400 / 4800 / 9600 / 19200 / 38400 / 57600 / 76800 / 115200		
Stop bits	Possible settings 1 / 2			
Parity	Possible settings None / Even / Odd			
Time-out [ms]	Possible settings 0 2000 99999			
Data bits:	RTU: 8 , ASCII: 7			
Mode	Possible settings RTU / ASCII			
Input data [byte]	64			
Output data [byte]	128 (process data) and 42 (diag- nostic data)	128 (process data)		
Data content	"Technical description"Technical descriptionSIGMA CONTROL 2 process image", document numberSIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 process in age", document number 7_9696_PA.7_7601xPA.			

Bold elements: Factory setting

Tab. 17 Technical Specifications - SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 interface

Assignment of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 interface

The Modbus interface is galvanically isolated and features RS485 and RS2232 signals. To use the RS232 interface, connect Pin 2 with Pin 3.

Pin	Direction	Signal	Description
1		GND	Data reference potential (isolated),
		C/C'	RS485: Bus polarization, for terminating resistor (pull-down)
2	Output	VP	+5V DC (isolated, max. 10mA) RS485: Bus polarization, +5V for terminating resistor (pull-up)
3	Input	PMC	To use RS232, connect with Pin 2. To use RS485, keep open.



Pin	Direction	Signal	Description
5	Bi-directional	B/B'	RS485 B (RxD/TxD positive)
7	Input	RxD	RS232 Receive data
8	Output	TxD	RS232 Send data
9	Bi-directional	A/A'	RS485 A (RxD/TxD negative)
Enclosure		_	Internally connected to functional ground (FE)

Tab. 18 Assignment of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 interface

2.4.7.3 Modbus TCP module

2

Modbus TCP interface

Feature	Value				
Controller	SIGMA CONTROL 2 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0				
Bus	Modbus TCP server (Slave)				
Connection	2x RJ45 ports (Cat5e, shielded), integ	2x RJ45 ports (Cat5e, shielded), integrated 2-port switch, potential isolation			
Baud rate [Mbit/s]	10/100, full duplex or half duplex				
Input data [byte]	64				
Output data [byte]	128 (process data) and 42 (diagnos- tic data)	194 (process data)			
Data content	"Technical description SIGMA CONTROL 2 process im- age", document number 7_7601xPA.	"Technical description SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 process im- age", document number 7_9696_PA.			

Tab. 19 Technical data Modbus TCP interface

Configuration of the Modbus TCP interface

Pin *	Signal	Conductor color	Description
1	TD+	Yellow	Send positive (positive transmit)
2	TD-	Orange	Send negative (negative transmit)
3	RD+	White	Positive receive
4, 5, 7, 8		_	-
6	RD-	Blue	Negative receive
Enclosure	Cable shield		High-impedance (1 MOhm/47 nF) connection with func- tional earthing (FE)

* Position of pins 1 through 8, see chapter 8

Tab. 20 Configuration of the Modbus TCP interface

Recommended conductors

Feature	Value
Conductor	Network conductor, CAT5 shielded, CU, for example: 7.7629.0
Plug	Bus plug RJ45, IP20, for example: 7.7628.0 or 7.7628.1



Feature	Value
Maximum cable length [ft.]	328

Tab. 21 Modbus TCP interface - recommended conductors

2.4.7.4 PROFINET module

2 2.4

PROFINET-interface

Feature	Value			
Controller	SIGMA CONTROL 2	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0		
Bus	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 device (Slave) with RT classification, conformity class B, topology detection (LLDP), network management (SNMP), redundancy, MRP protocol			
Connection	2x RJ45 ports (Cat5e), 2-port switch, potential isolation			
Baud rate [Mbit/s]	100, full duplex			
GSD file	GSDML-V2.25-Kaeser- SC2-20120203.xml	GSDML-V2.3-Kaeser-SAM2-20150112		
Input data [byte]	64			
Output data [byte]	128 (process data)			
Data content, see Document No.	"Technical description SIGMA CONTROL 2 process im- age", document number 7_7601xPA.	"Technical description SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 process im- age", document number 7_9696_PA.		

Tab. 22 Technical Specifications - SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 interface

Assignment of PROFINET interface

Pin *	Signal	Conductor color	Description
1	TD+	Yellow	Send positive (positive transmit)
2	TD–	Orange	Send negative (negative Transmit)
3	RD+	White	Positive receive
4, 5, 7, 8	_	_	
6	RD-	Blue	Negative receive
Enclosure	Cable shield		High-impedance (1 MOhm/47 nF) connection with func- tional earthing (FE)

* Position of pins 1 through 8, see chapter 8

Tab. 23 Assignment of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 interface

Recommended conductors

Feature	Value
Conductor	PROFINET conductor, CAT5 shielded, CU, for example: 7.7629.0



Technical Data

2.4 Components within the control cabinet

Feature	Value
Plug	Bus plug RJ45, IP20, for example: 7.7628.0 or 7.7628.1
Maximum cable length [ft.]	328

Tab. 24 Recommended conductors - SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 interface

2.4.7.5 EtherNet/IP-Module

2

EtherNet/IP-Interface

Feature	Value			
Controller	SIGMA CONTROL 2 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0			
Bus	EtherNet/IP-Server (Slave)			
Connection	2x RJ45 ports (Cat5e, shielded), integrated 2-port switch, potential isolation			
Baud rate [Mbit/s]	10/100, full duplex or half duplex			
Input data [byte]	64			
Output data [byte]	128 (process data) and 42 (diagnos- tic data)	194 (process data)		
Data content	"Technical description SIGMA CONTROL 2 process image", document number 7_7601xPA.	"Technical description SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 process im- age", document number 7_9696_PA.		

Tab. 25 Technical data EtherNet/IP-Interface

Configuration of the EtherNet/IP-Interface

Pin *	Signal	Conductor color	Description
1	TD+	Yellow	Send positive (positive transmit)
2	TD–	Orange	Send negative (negative transmit)
3	RD+	White	Positive receive
4, 5, 7, 8	_	_	
6	RD-	Blue	Negative receive
Enclosure	Cable shield		High-impedance (1 MOhm/47 nF) connection with func- tional earthing (FE)

- * Position of pins 1 through 8, see chapter 8
- Tab. 26 Configuration of the EtherNet/IP-Interface

Recommended conductor

Feature	Value
Conductor	Network conductor, CAT5 shielded, CU, for example: 7.7629.0
Plug	Bus plug RJ45, IP20, for example: 7.7628.0 or 7.7628.1
Maximum cable length [ft.]	328

Tab. 27 EtherNet/IP-Interface - Cabling recommendation



Technical Data Control cabinet

2.5 Control cabinet

A dimensional drawing is found in the annex (see chapter 13.1).

Model	SAM 2-4	SAM 2-8	SAM 2-16
Material	Enclosure: Sheet metal, painted RA Cover: Plastic, RAL 7016, anthra		L 9007 grey acite grey
Weight [lb]	44		
Enclosure protection	IP54		

Tab. 28 Control cabinet data

2.6 Pressure transducer

See chapter 13.5 Installation accessories for part numbers.

Models I and II pressure transducers

Туре	I	II
Measuring range relative [psig]	0–14.5	0–87/145/652
Overload limit [psig]	72	double final pressure
Deviation of characteristic from final value (Limit setting) [%]	≤ 0.5	$\leq 0.5~(0.25~typical)$
Air connection, male thread	G 1/2 B EN 837 Stainless steel	G 1/4 A DIN 3852 Stainless steel FKM seal Viton seals
Rated temperature range [°F]	-4+176	–13+185
Fluid temperature range [°F]	-22+212	-40+212
Storage temperature range [°F]	-40+212	-40+212
Temperature influence / 18°F over the range [%]	± 0.2	± 0.15
Temperature influence / 18°F over the range [%]	± 0.2	± 0.15
Output signal (two-wire technique) [mA]	4-20	4-20
Power supply connection (plug to EN 175301-803-A Form A)	PG 11	PG 9
Enclosure	Stainless steel	Stainless steel
Enclosure protection	IP 65	IP 65
Tightening torque [Nm]	17-20	20

Tab. 29 Models I and II pressure transducers

Pressure transducer model III and vacuum

Туре	III	Vacuum pump
Measuring range relative [psig]	0-232/362/464	-
Measurement range, absolute [psig]	-	0–14.5



2.6 Pressure transducer

2

Туре	III	Vacuum pump
Overload limit [psig]	2.5 x discharge pres- sure	2.5 x discharge pres- sure
Deviation of characteristic from final value Limit setting [%]	≤ 0.5	≤ 0.5
Air connection, male thread	G 1/2 B	G 1/2 B
Air connection female thread	G 1/8 B	G 1/8 B
Rated temperature range [°F]	-13+185	-13+185
Fluid temperature range [°F]	-22+257	-22+257
Storage temperature range [°F]	-58+212	-58+212
Temperature influence / 18°F over the range [%]	± 0.3	± 0.3
Temperature influence / 18°F over the range [%]	± 0.3	± 0.3
Output signal (two-wire technique) [mA]	4-20	4-20
Power supply connection (plug to EN 175301-803-A Form A)	PG 11	PG 11
Enclosure	brass	brass
Enclosure protection	IP 65	IP 65
Tightening torque [Nm]	30	30

Tab. 30 Models III and vacuum pressure transducers



Basic instructions

3 Safety and Responsibility

3.1 Basic instructions

3.1

A DANGER

Disregarding these instructions can result in serious injury.

 To safely operate this product, carefully read the operating manual and take notice of its contents.

The product SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is manufactured to the latest engineering standards and acknowledged safety regulations. Nevertheless, dangers can arise through its operation:

- Danger to life and limb of the operator or third parties,
- impairments to the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 and other material assets.
- Therefore, observe the following:
 - Use the product SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 only if it is in a technically perfect condition and only for the purpose for which it is intended; observe all safety measures and the instructions in the service manual.
 - In particular, immediately rectify (have rectified) any faults that could be detrimental to safety.

3.2 Specified use

Specified use also includes compliance with the instructions in this manual.

The SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is intended exclusively for the operation of compressors, blowers and vacuum systems in industrial fields and may only be operated within its associated control cabinet. Any other use is considered incorrect. The manufacturer is not liable for any damages that may result from incorrect use. The user alone is liable for any risks incurred.

- Adhere to the specified use given in this manual.
- Operate the product only within its performance limits and under the permitted ambient conditions.

3.3 Improper use

ĥ

Specified use also includes compliance with the instructions in this manual.

Converting or changing the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 constitutes improper use. The manufacturer's warranty is made invalid in such cases.

Improper usage can cause damage to property and/or (severe) injuries.

- ► Use SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 only as intended.
- Do not use SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 to control other machines or products for which SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is not intended.
- ► Do not allow conversions or changes.


3.4 User's Responsibilities

3.4.1 Observe statutory and universally accepted regulations

 Observe relevant statutory and accepted regulations during installation, operation and maintenance of the equipment.

3.4.2 Qualified personnel

These are people who, by virtue of their training, knowledge and experience as well as their knowledge of relevant regulations can assess the work to be done and recognize the possible dangers involved.

Authorized operators possess the following qualifications:

- are of legal age,
- are familiar with and adhere to the safety instructions and sections of the service manual relevant to operation,
- have received adequate training and authorization to operate electrical and compressed air devices.

Authorized installation and maintenance personnel have the following qualifications:

- are of legal age,
- have read, are familiar with and adhere to the safety instructions and sections of the service manual applicable to installation and maintenance,
- are fully conversant with the safety concepts and regulations of electrical and compressed air engineering,
- are able to recognize the possible dangers of electrical and compressed air devices and take appropriate measures to safeguard persons and property,
- have received adequate training and authorization for the safe installation and maintenance on this equipment.
- Ensure that operating, installation and maintenance personnel are qualified and authorized to carry out their tasks.

3.5 Safety signs

The table lists the various safety signs used and their meanings.

Sign Meaning



Danger of fatal injury from electric shock!

Before starting any work on electrical equipment: Switch off and lock out the power supply disconnecting device and verify the absence of any voltage.

Tab. 31 Safety signs



3.6 Dangers

The general safety instructions contained in this chapter provide an overview of the possible dangers and general rules of conduct when dealing with them. Specific safety instructions can be found in this operating manual at the beginning of each chapter or directly before a task instruction.

Fully observe all safety instructions!

3.6.1 Safely handling potential sources of danger

Electricity

- Shut off the power supply (all poles).
- Switch off any external power sources.



Voltage remains present at the correspondingly marked terminals (colored orange or labelled) on the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0, even when the power supply is switched off.

- Check and ensure the absence of any voltage.
- ► Before switching on again, ensure that:
 - no maintenance personnel are working on the machine,
 - all cover panels are fixed in place,
 - all maintenance doors are closed.
- Allow only qualified electricians or trained personnel under the supervision of a qualified electrician to carry out work on electrical equipment in accordance with electrical engineering regulations.
- Observe all recognized occupational safety regulations and legal requirements applicable when carrying out any work on the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.
- Use appropriate fusing for the current consumption (see chapter 2).
- Establish electrical connections only when the machine is in a voltage-free state and check them regularly for tightness and satisfactory condition.
- Only use electrical cables that are suitable and approved for the relevant surroundings and electrical loads.
- Before each commissioning of connected machines by the operator, establish and check protection against touch voltages that are dangerous in the event of direct or indirect contact.

3.6.2 Safely operating the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0

The following points must be observed in order to avoid damage to the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0:

A WARNING

A short circuit can cause irreparable damage to the PROFIBUS interface.

- Avoid short circuits to the power supply pins in the PROFIBUS interface for the PROFIBUS/SIGMA NETWORK converter.
- Do not remove any plugs from the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 during operation of the compressed air station.
- ➤ Only operate the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 with all supply cables connected.
- > Do not modify, bypass or disable the safety devices.



3.7 Warranty

- > Do not remove or render illegible any labels/information signs.
- Only use spare parts approved by the manufacturer for use with the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.

3.7 Warranty

3

This service manual does not contain any independent warranty commitment. Our general terms and conditions apply with regard to warranty.

A condition of our warranty is the specified use of the master controller under observation of the specific operating conditions.

Due to the large number of possible applications, it is incumbent on the user to determine whether the master controller can be used for any specific application.

Furthermore, we accept no warranty obligation for:

- the use of unsuitable parts or operating materials,
- unauthorized modifications,
- incorrect maintenance,
- incorrect repair.

Correct maintenance and repair means the use of genuine Kaeser spare parts.

> Obtain confirmation from KAESER that your specific operating conditions are suitable.



4 Design and Function

4.1 Overview

The SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is used for the control, regulation and monitoring of stations with multiple compressors, blowers or vacuum machines in a commercial environment. SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 reacts flexibly to fluctuating compressed air demand and thus reduces energy consumption. The system takes into account machine run times and deployment priorities. Important parameters are clearly represented as colored graphic elements. The operating data can be displayed on a user-friendly, high-resolution touch screen. All important operating data is recorded in the internal long-term data memory.



SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is centrally configured with the "Engineering Base" planning tool. "Engineering Base" creates a configuration for easy import in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0. No time-consuming commissioning and configuration on-site. Just a few settings such as date and time, must be entered at the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is offered as:

- SAM 4.0-4
- SAM 4.0-8
- SAM 4.0-16

They differ in the number of controllable machines (see chapter 2 "Design variants and options"). Using the SBU, you can flexibly expand the number of interfaces.

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 comprises the following components:

- The central pressure transducer measures the pressure in the air network and passes the value to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.
- The processing unit of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 decides according to default parameters, which machines are switched to load to keep the pressure in the air main constant. All data are clearly graphically represented. You can analyze and archive the data provided.
- The display and control panel of the touch screen provides information on current pressure and other parameter values and offers various possibilities for individual settings.

Compressors with SIGMA CONTROL and SIGMA CONTROL 2 as well as those with conventional controllers can be linked to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.



4.1 Overview



4 SBU

8 Analog input for pressure transducer



Operating panel

4.2 Operating panel

4

4.2



Fig. 3 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 operating panel

No.:	Sign	Operating element	Key illumination	Function	Description
1		Touch screen		Operation of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 functions.	Chapter 4.3 "Touch screen"
2	C RFID	"RFID" reader		User log-in with RFID Equipment Card.	Chapter 4.4 "User log- in"
3		«Remote control» key	Green	Activation and deactiva- tion of the remote opera- tion.	Chapter 7.19 "Control technology"
4	Ŀ	«Timer control» key	Green	Switches the time control on or off.	Chapter 7.17 "Timer control"
5	୬	«Automatic» key	Green	Switch the station be- tween manual and auto- matic mode.	Chapter 7.20 "SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0" Activating
					Chapter 8.2 "Switching on and off"



4.3 Touch screen

No.:	Sign	Operating element	Key illumination	Function	Description
6	U	«Compressed air generation» key	Green/red	Compressed air station activation (air supply) or deactivation (ATTEN- TION: no air supply!).	Chapter 7.2 "First acti- vation" Chapter 8.2 "Switching on and off"

Tab. 32 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 operating panel

4.3 Touch screen

The SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is controlled via an integrated touch screen. This intuitive, touchsensitive operating element is incorporated into the color display. Operate the controller by touching the glass surface.

The touch screen menu is structured as follows:



Fig. 4 Touchscreen menu

No.	Menu element	Function	Description
1	Device selection list	Selection of machines, individually or by groups	Chapter 8.5 "Selecting machines"
2	Product designation		
3	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 version	e.g. SAM 4.0-4	

¹⁾ Please contact an authorized KAESER service representative for information about availability



Touch screen

4.3

No.	Menu element	Function	Description
4	System status	Traffic light function: Green: Operation Yellow: Maintenance/warning Red: Malfunction (compressor alarm!)	
5	Operating mode	Displays selected operating mode	
6	Pressure gauge	Display of current "system pressure"	
7	Access mode	 Displays current access mode: — (logged out) Configuration Observation 	Chapter 7.4 "User log-in"
8-17	Function selection bar	Selection of the individual function me- nus	Chapter 8.5 "Selecting machines"
8	Status	Open the <i>Status</i> menu	Chapter 8.4 "Status"
9	Messages	Open the <i>Messages</i> menu	Chapter 9.2 "Messages"
10	Monitoring	Open the <i>Monitoring</i> menu	Chapter 8.6 "Monitoring"
11	Energy & costs	Open the <i>Energy & costs</i> menu	Chapter 8.7 "Energy & costs"
12	Maintenance	Open the <i>Maintenance</i> menu	Chapter 1010.2.1 "Maintenance"
13	Control	Open the <i>Control</i> menu	Chapter 7.16 "Control"
14	SAM 4.0 Logic	Open the SAM 4.0 Logic menu	1)
15	Timer control	Open the <i>Timer control</i> menu	Chapter 7.17 "Timer control"
16	Initial Start-up	Menus for commissioning the com- pressed air station	Chapter 7 "Initial Start-up"
17	Configuration	Configuration menus for SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0	Chapter 7 "Initial Start-up"
18	Info	Open the Info menu	Chapter 8.3 "Help func- tion"
19	Contact	Open the <i>Contact</i> menu	Chapter 8.9 "Contact"
20	Zoom in /out	Menu commands to zoom in and out	
21	Live data display	Displays current data and measure- ment values for the compressed air station	Chapter 8.4.7 "Station"
22	Device selection Up/ Down	Device selection list; scrollbar provided for more than 10 devices	Chapter 8.5 "Selecting machines"

¹⁾ Please contact an authorized KAESER service representative for information about availability

Tab. 33 Touchscreen menu elements

This operating manual defines the touch screen operating elements as follows:

 "Key" (touch-sensitive key). Keys are usually labeled with text. Displayed in this operating manual as: Key.



.4 User log-in with RFID Equipment Card

- "Symbol" (key with graphic representing a specific function, for example: (). These keys are labeled with a commonly understood symbol. The symbol is explained with a descriptive text when used for the first time.
- "Keyboard" (for the input of alphanumeric and special characters). When input is required, a virtual keyboard is displayed over the current menu.

Some menus support resizing of the menu display via a two-fingered pinch or stretch gesture (the \mathbb{P}/\mathbb{P} symbols are displayed). Place your fingers on the display and swipe in opposite directions to zoom in. The displayed elements can be moved horizontally or vertically by using one finger.

Some of the elements displayed are touch-sensitive. By tapping on these elements, corresponding menus can be opened, measured values displayed or the elements marked for further processing.

4.4 User log-in with RFID Equipment Card

The RFID Equipment Cards provide various functionalities:

- Switch between three operating modes:
 - Logged out
 - Observation
 - Configuration
- Encryption ensures security
- Different access levels for the customer (RFID Equipment Card) and Service (RFID Key) The system records which user is when logged on at SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0. You can thus determine who was logged on when specific messages or other events have occurred.



- Fig. 5 User management with RFID
 - 1 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0
 - (2) RFID Equipment Card
 - 3 RFID Key



Menu structure

4.5 Menu structure

4 4.5

Menu element	Sub-menu element	Description
Status	 "Overview" "Pressure curve" "Pressure display" "Current values" "History" 	Chapter 8.4.1
	"Manual preselect"	Chapter 8.4.5
	 "Sources" "Pressure and power" "Preselect" "Priorities" 	Chapter 8.4.6
	 "Station" 	Chapter 8.4.7
Messages	"Unacknowledged"	Chapter 9.2
	 "Active" 	Chapter 9.2
	 "History" 	Chapter 9.2
Monitoring	 "Compressed air consumption" 	Chapter 8.6.1
	 "Specific power" 	Chapter 8.6.2
	 "Measurement data" 	Chapter 8.6.3
	"Export"	Chapter 8.6.4
Energy & costs	■ "Table"	Chapter 8.7.1
	– "Export"	Chapter 8.7.2
	■ "Diagram"	Chapter 8.7.3
	 "Period comparison" 	Chapter 8.7.4
	 "Tariff configuration" 	Chapter 8.7.5
	"Report"	Chapter 8.7.6
Control	 "Parameter" "Constant pressure control" "Pressure monitoring" "Volume flow rate control" 	Chapter 7.16
Timer control	 "Overview" 	Chapter 7.17
Initial Start-up	"SIGMA NETWORK I/O"	Chapter 7.13
	"PROFIBUS"	Chapter 7.14
	"SIGMA NETWORK"	Chapter 7.15
	 "Control technology" 	Chapter 7.19
	 "Software update" 	Chapter 10.3
	 "Import configuration" 	Chapter 7.5
	 "Data backup" 	Chapter 7.18



Operation and function 4.6

Menu element	Sub-menu element	Description
Configuration	 "SAM 4.0 terminal" "Serial data" "Measurement data" "X6 SIGMA NETWORK" "X7 Ethernet 1 Gb" 	Chapter 7.11
	 "E-mail" "Send options" "General settings" "Alive message" "History" 	Chapter 7.12
	■ "Units"	Chapter 7.7
	■ "Key lock"	Chapter 7.8
	 "User administration" 	Chapter 7.4.3
	 "Date and time" 	Chapter 7.6
	■ "Display"	Chapter 7.9
	 "Menu behaviour" 	Chapter 7.10
	"Language"	Chapter 7.3

Tab. 34 Menu structure

M

Operation and function 4.6

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 was designed and developed for a number of applications. Prior to commissioning, the "Engineering Base" planning tool is used to configure the application. Only some settings must be specified using the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 touch screen.

4.6.1 3-Dadvanced Adaptive control

The adaptive 3-D^{advanced} control minimizes the energy requirements of the compressed air station by automatically adapting to the operating conditions.

It automatically adjusts machine activation/de-activation as well as the cut-out and cut-in pressures for the selected machines to the current operating conditions of the compressed air station.

4.6.2 **Timer control**

Using the timing control, you can set timers for various compressed air station parameters (such as required pressure and air delivery ON/OFF). Timers can be set for up to 99 tasks. Series tasks can be set up to take place weekly, for example.

Further information See Chapter 7.17 for information about timers.

4.6.3 Power limiting

If the power limiting function is activated, the system will add machines only as long as the overall load capacity of the running machines does not exceed the specified power limit. The nominal pressure and the maximum speed are used to calculate the overall load capacity.



4.6.4 Air main charging

After the activation of the compressed air station, the air network is gradually charged within the specified network charging time (e.g. 20 minutes). The air main charging process ends when the required working pressure is reached or when the air main charging time expires.

4.6.5 Manual

A compressed air station can run in the *Manual* operating mode if each machine has its own system pressure switch or pressure control system. This is always the case with KAESER rotary screw compressors. In compressed air stations with blowers or reciprocating compressors, machines may or may not be equipped with their own system pressure switches. Stations with machines without system pressure switches will deliver no compressed air in the *Manual* mode or if the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 fails.

Compressed air station with compressed air generation in the Manual operating mode



The *Manual* mode can cause large pressure swings in the compressed air system.

The connected machines are automatically switched to the *Local operation* mode:

- When the power supply SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 fails with the station active (compressed air generation ON, Station ON key lights up green)
- When the connection to the pressure transducer is interrupted
- When SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 itself fails

In the *Manual* operating mode, the machines run via their internal pressure control, independently of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0. The machines can also be manually switched to *Manual* for test purposes.

Compressed air station without compressed air generation in the Manual operating mode



No compressed air is delivered without SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.

The output relays switch off:

- When the power supply to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 fails with the station active (compressed air generation ON, Station ON key lights up green)
- When the connection to the pressure transducer is interrupted
- When SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 itself fails

This causes the connected machines to switch to IDLE or OFF. The compressed air system no longer delivers compressed air.

4.6.6 KAESER CONNECT

The user interface of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 can be viewed on an external computer (PC, laptop, tablet). For this purpose, SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 must be connected to the external computer via the X7 Ethernet 1 Gb, directly via a network cable or indirectly (network). A web browser is used for visualization (see chapter 8.8"KAESER CONNECT").



4.6 Operation and function



Fig. 6 KAESER CONNECT

4.6.7 KAESER loT Client

The KAESER IoT Client is a data transmission component for SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0. It is arranged between SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 and the KAESER data center. The X7 Ethernet 1 Gb interface is used to connect it to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 at one end and Ethernet to the userprovided LAN or Internet router on the other end. The data is secured with VPN and transmitted to the KAESER data center.



Fig. 7 Data transmission SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 - KAESER data center

- 1 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0
 - 2 Ethernet
 - 3 KAESER loT Client

- (4) VPN¹⁾ via user-supplied LAN or Internet router
- (5) KAESER data center

¹⁾ Virtual Private Network built on public network infrastructure



Environment

5 Installation and Operating Conditions

5.1 Environment

5 5.1

Temperature range

Ambient temperatures

Min. ambient temperature	Maximum ambient temperature
32 °F	113 °F

Tab. 35Ambient temperatures

Storage temperatures		
Minimum storage temperature	Maximum storage temperature	
-4°F	158°F	

Tab. 36Storage temperatures

Note permissible ambient temperatures:

- 1. Check ambient temperature.
- 2. Adjust equipment location to suitable ambient temperature range.

Note storage temperature:

- 1. Check temperature of storage location.
- 2. Adjust storage temperature to suitable range.

5.2 Installation conditions

A

- See also chapter 1.3, "Approvals".
- Install SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 as appropriate.

5.2.1 Operation in an industrial environment

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is designed for the operation in an industrial environment with proprietary supply network separated from the public supply by a transformer or generator.

► Install and supply SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 accordingly.



6.1 Installation

6 Installation

6.1 Installation

6

Connection	SIGMA CONTROL and SIGMA CONTROL 2	Conventional	Description
Ensuring safety	X	X	Chapter 6.2 "Ensuring safety"
Reporting transport dam- age	X	x	Chapter 6.3 "Reporting transport damage"
Compressed air supply during installation	x	x	Chapter 6.4 "Com- pressed air supply dur- ing installation"
Scope of delivery	x	x	Chapter 6.5 "Scope of delivery"
Installing the control cabi- net	x	x	Chapter 6.6 "Installing the control cabinet"
Identifying the machines	X	X	Chapter 6.7 "Identify- ing the machines"
Connecting the pressure transducers	x	x	Chapter 6.8 "Connect- ing the pressure trans- ducer"
Installing the communica- tion module	x	x	Chapter 6.9 "Installing the communication module"
Planning the wiring	x	x	Chapter 6.10 "Plan- ning the wiring"
Laying cables	x	x	Chapter 6.11 "Laying cables"
Creating SIGMA NETWORK	x	_	Chapter 6.11.1 Creat- ing the "SIGMA NETWORK"
Creating the PROFIBUS network	x	_	Chapter 6.11.2 Creat- ing the "PROFIBUS" network
Setting up the compres- sor station via floating re- lay contacts	_	x	Chapter 6.11.3 "Creat- ing the compressor station via floating re- lay contacts"
Connecting the cables to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0	x	x	Chapter 6.12 "Con- necting cables"
Setting up the machines	x	x	Chapter 6.13 "Setting up the machines"

Tab. 37 Installation



6.2 Ensuring safety

Follow the instructions below for safe installation. Warning instructions are located before a potentially dangerous task.



Disregard of warning instructions can cause serious injuries!

Complying with safety warnings

Disregard of safety notes can cause unforeseeable dangers!

- Comply with the instructions in chapter 3 Safety and Responsibility.
- > This product may only be installed by a qualified person. See chapter 3, "Assigning personnel".

When working on live components

Touching voltage carrying components can result in electric shocks, burns or death.

- > Work on electrical equipment may only be carried out by authorized electricians.
- Switch off and lock out the power supply disconnecting device and check that no voltage is present.
- Check that there is no voltage on floating relay contacts.

6.3 Reporting transport damage

- 1. Check the master controller for visible and hidden transport damage.
- 2. Inform the carrier and the manufacturer in writing of any damage without delay.

6.4 Compressed air supply during installation

- Check the compressor station's EMERGENCY mode characteristics.
 - Compressed air station with compressed air generation in the *Manual* operating mode: Chapter 6.4.1
 - Compressed air station without compressed air generation in the *Manual* operating mode: Chapter 6.4.2

6.4.1 Compressed air station with compressed air generation in the Manual operating mode

It is possible to install and start up the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 without shutting down the complete air system.

A DANGER

Mortal danger from electric current

- The machine must be free of voltage before work commences.
- 1. Isolate the machine from all sources of voltage.
- 2. Make sure the machine is voltage-free.
- 3. Connect the machine to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 (chapters 6.10 to 6.12).



6.5 Scope of delivery

- 4. Put the machine back into operation.
- 5. Repeat steps 1 to 3 for any further machines.
- 6. Carry out commissioning and settings in accordance with chapter 7.
- 7. Do not switch SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 from *Manual* to *Automatic* mode until these settings have been completed.

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 subsequently assumes control of the machines.

Further information See chapter 4.6.5 "Manual".

6

6.4.2 Compressed air station without compressed air generation in the Manual operating mode

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is required for the supply of compressed air. The compressed air system is not operational until initial start-up of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is completed.

➤ Switch on the compressor station after commissioning SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.

Further information See chapter 4.6.5 "Manual".

6.5 Scope of delivery

This product comprises at least the following components (depending on the selected configuration, additional components may be provided):

ltem	Material	Description
10	SAM2.1	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 (SAM 4.0-4, SAM 4.0-8 or SAM 4.0-16)
20		Pressure transducer (as configured)
30		2x RFID Equipment Card
40		Edge protection
50		This instruction



6.6 Installing the control cabinet

A solid, vibration-free and load-bearing wall is required for the control cabinet.



Take the following criteria into consideration when selecting the installation location and the installation of the control cabinet:

- A dimensional drawing is found in the annex (see chapter 13.1).
- The fixing materials must be compatible with the type of wall and the weight of the control cabinet (chapter 2).
- The control cabinet must be fully accessible.
- Fully opening control cabinet door.
- A free escape route must be maintained (with the control cabinet door fully open).
- Protection from direct sunlight, rain, splashed water or excessive dust build up must be provided.



6 6.6

Installation Installing the control cabinet

Material Switching cabinet key type: Two-way key 3 mm Hexagon spanner, 4 mm width Open-end spanner, 6 mm width

A WARNING

Overheating from insufficient ventilation

The space between the wall and the rear of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 must remain clear to support ventilation!



Open the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 cover Fig. 8

Control cabinet cover (1)

6 Spagnolet

2 Base plate

- 5 Cover with SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal
- 7 Base
- 8 Cable gland cover
- 1. Carefully unpack the control cabinet. Protect the sensitive surfaces (e.g., cover (5) with touch screen terminal) from damage.
- 2. Place the entire control cabinet onto a suitable surface 7 (protected from dirt and scratching) with the base plate 2 pointing downward.
- 3. Use the control cabinet key to unlock the spagnolet (6) at the control cabinet (1).
- 4. Open the cover (5) in arrow direction.
- 5. At the terminal, detach the cables which are connected from the modules on the base plate [2] with the terminal (5). To detach the equipotential bonding connector (PE), press its latching clasp.
- 6. At the equipotential bonding connector (PE), detach the protective conductor connection between the terminal strip on the base plate [2] to the equipotential bonding connector (PE) in the control cabinet cover 1.



6.7 Identifying the machines





Fig. 9

- Control cabinet cover (1)
- (2) Base plate

- M 6x16, SW6 toothed nut
- 3 (4)
 - M 6x16, SW4 flat mushroom-head screw with hexagon socket
- 7. Pull the cable gland cover (8) upward from the base plate and place on a suitable surface (7).
- 8. Separate the control cabinet cover 1 (enclosure cover with SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal) from the base plate 2 as follows.
- 9. First, use the SW4 spanner wrench to unscrew the two screws 3, then loosen the two screws [4] and carefully lift the control cabinet cover [1] in arrow direction (see Fig. 9).
- 10. Place the control cabinet cover (1) onto a suitable surface (7) (protected from dirt and scratching).
- 11. Properly attach the base plate 2 to the wall. A template for the bore holes is provided in the annex (see chapter 13.1).
- 12. Wire the control cabinet as described in chapter 6.12.

Identifying the machines 6.7

Machines with the same model type must be identified to allow for different internal pressure settings.

Identify the machines as defined in the "Engineering Base" configuration.

The alarm and service messages displayed on SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 can thus be matched with the correct machine.

Identification (machine and SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0) for remote control

The machines and SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 must carry a warning notice when they are in remote mode.

- Warning notice for the machines
 - "WARNING": This machine is remotely controlled and can start automatically at any time.
- Warning notices for identification at SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.
 - Before starting, make sure that no one is working on the machines and that they can be started safely.



6

6.8 Connecting the pressure transducer

Place the notices so they are highly visible:

- 1. Place warning notices on the machine.
- 2. Place warning notices on the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.

6.8 Connecting the pressure transducer

Precondition The connection point is not under pressure.

NOTICE

Network pressure too high Damage to the pressure transducer can occur.

- Never connect the pressure transducer to a pressurized network with a maximum pressure exceeding the rated pressure of the pressure transducer.
- 1. Check the maximum network pressure.
- 2. Check the nominal network pressure

6.8.1 Mechanical connection

The pressure transducer diagram (illustration 10) shows the correct position for the transducer:



6

6.8 Connecting the pressure transducer



Fig. 10 Pressure transducer position

- 1 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0
- 2 Machine 1
- 3 Machine 2
- A Machine 3
- 5 Machine 4
- 6 Compressed air production
- (7) Compressed air treatment
- 8 Air receiver
- 9 Shut-off valve
- (10) Connection point pressure transducer
- (11) Pressure transducer
- (12) Compressed air outlet



Installation

6 6.8

Connecting the pressure transducer

- > Pay attention to the following when connecting the pressure transducer:
 - Connect the pressure transducer either to the side or the top of the air receiver so that no condensate can settle.
 - If the pressure transducer is connected to the main collector pipe, fit a small, additional air receiver (item (8) order separately, see chapter 13.5 for the part number).
 - Fit the pressure transducer downstream of the air treatment components because pressure losses caused by air treatment components or pipework can occur between the machine and the point of measurement.
 - The airflow at the point of measurement must not pulsate.
 - Pay attention to the installation depth.
 - Fit a shut-off valve between the air receiver and the pressure transducer. This allows replacement of the pressure transducer without having to vent the air receiver. Do not close the shut-off valve during operation.
 - A kit of parts for the air connection is available separately (see chapter 13.5 for the material number).

6.8.2 Power Supply



Avoid signal corruption.

1. Use two conductor screened cable with minimum section 18 AWG.

2. The pressure transducer must be grounded.

- Ground by metallic contact with the air receiver or
- Use a separate equipotential bonding conductor with a minimum cross-section 1 x 7 AWG (with, for example, a ground clamp (G 3/4) on the transducer housing).
- 3. Connect SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 and the pressure transducer at the same equipotential bonding conductor. The potential difference between both grounding points must be zero.
- 4. Connect the cable shielding to ground on the pressure transducer and to a screening connection in the control cabinet.



- Fig. 11 Connecting the screening
 - 5. Feed the conductor through an EMC cable gland into the control cabinet.
 - 6. Maintain a separation of at least 4 in. between the connecting cable and power cables.



6.9 Installing the communication module

Material SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0-supported KAESER communication module (see Chapter 2.3) Slotted screwdriver: 2.5 – 3 mm blade width Screwdriver (straight or offset), maximum length: 70 mm: Torx T9

- Precondition The power supply disconnecting device is switched off, the device is locked off, and the absence of any voltage has been verified.
 - 1. Open the cover of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal (see chapter 6.6 "Installing the control cabinet").

The bay for communication module installation is located at the rear of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal. It is marked "Com module X1" and is accessible from below.



- Fig. 12 Remove the plastic cover
 - (1) Slotted screwdriver
 - 2 Plastic cover
 - 2. Use a slotted screwdriver to remove the plastic cover (2) of the module bay (1).



- Fig. 13 Insert the communication module
 - (3) Module bay "Com-Module X1"
 - (4) Communication module
 - (5) Fixing screws



6.10 Planning the wiring

- 3. Push the communication module ④ into the module bay ③ from below until you feel it snap into place. The bus interface will face downward and the top of the module with the KAESER logo will be visible.
- 4. Use the Torx T9 screwdriver to screw in the fixing screws (5).
- Result The module is correctly installed when the front plate is seated firmly in the recess of the module bay.

6.10 Planning the wiring

There are several methods of connecting the machines to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU:

- Using SIGMA NETWORK (for machines with SIGMA CONTROL 2), see chapter 6.11.1.
 Prerequisite: A port is available for each machine: SIGMA NETWORK in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU are available.
- PROFIBUS (when replacing a SIGMA AIR MANAGER with SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or for machines with SIGMA CONTROL), see chapter 6.11.2.
 Prerequisite: The option PROFIBUS master is available in the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU.
 - Using floating relay contacts

(for conventional machines without SIGMA CONTROL or SIGMA CONTROL 2; see chapter 6.11.3).

Prerequisite: **A minimum of** one DOR I/O output is available in the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU for each machine. We recommend one DOR I/O port and one DI I/O port for each machine.

6.10.1 SIGMA NETWORK

The users are connected to SIGMA NETWORK in a star set-up. All lines start from a switch that is installed in the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU.



- Fig. 14 SIGMA NETWORK design
 - 1 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0
 - 2 SBU with option SIGMA NETWORK
- 3 Machine with SIGMA CONTROL 2
- A SIGMA NETWORK



6.10.2 PROFIBUS network

PROFIBUS wiring is used when a SIGMA AIR MANAGER is replaced by SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or in machines with SIGMA CONTROL. The PROFIBUS users are connected in series, that is, one after another. SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU are located at the end of the bus.

A terminating resistor can be activated in every PROFIBUS connector. At the start and at the end of the bus cable, this resistor must be set to ON. In all other PROFIBUS connectors within the network, you must set the terminating resistors to OFF.



B

- Fig. 15 Structure of a PROFIBUS network SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 with Option E1: PROFIBUS master
 - 1 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0
 - 2 Machine with SIGMA CONTROL or SIGMA CONTROL 2
 - ③ PROFIBUS connector with terminating resistor position: ON
- PROFIBUS connector with terminating resistor position: OFF
 - PROFIBUS



6.10 Planning the wiring



Fig. 16 Structure of a PROFIBUS network – SBU with Option E1: PROFIBUS master

- (1) SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0
- 2 SBU
- Machine with SIGMA CONTROL or SIGMA CONTROL 2
- PROFIBUS connector with terminating resistor position: ON
- 5 PROFIBUS connector with terminating resistor position: OFF
- (A) SIGMA NETWORK
- B PROFIBUS

6.10.3 Floating contacts

Machines with SIGMA CONTROL BASIC and conventional machines (without SIGMA CONTROL or SIGMA CONTROL 2) are connected as star using floating contacts. Each machine is directly connected to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU.



 Machine connected via floating relay contacts



6.10 Planning the wiring

6.10.4 Instructions on the electrical installation

- A power supply disconnecting device according to EN 60204-1: 2018 must be installed by the user.
- Do not exceed the following maximum values for the cable lengths:

Туре	Maximum cable length [ft]	Remark
SIGMA NETWORK (cop- per)	328	Maximum conductor length be- tween two devices at the SIGMA NETWORK.
SIGMA NETWORK FOC (fiber optic cable)	9842	Maximum cable length between two SIGMA NETWORK users with the FOC option (standard Multi- mode) or OLM version
	32808	Maximum cable length between two SIGMA NETWORK users with E19 Single mode FOC option
Digital transistor outputs	98	
Digital relay outputs	328	
Digital inputs	98	
Analogue inputs	98	Shielded
PROFIBUS	2625	Maximum cable length of the en- tire PROFIBUS.

Tab. 39 Maximum cable lengths

- Use galvanic isolation on cables laid outside the building to ensure increased lightning protection (preferably fiber optic cable).
- See chapter 2 for line types and cross-sections and the wiring diagram in chapter 13.7 for the cable layout. We recommend to use flexible braids if possible.
- Suppression of inductive loads connected to the relay outputs.

6.10.5 Prerequisites and accessories required for connection with SIGMA NETWORK

Prerequisite: For each SIGMA NETWORK device (SIGMA CONTROL 2 machine, SBU) a port is available: SIGMA NETWORK.

The following accessories are required for the construction of a SIGMA NETWORK (see chapter 13.5 for material numbers):

- Cable SIGMA NETWORK.
- For SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0: One RJ45 bus connector for every device to be connected to SIGMA NETWORK.
- For SBU: One RJ45 bus connector for every device to be connected to SIGMA NETWORK.
- For every SIGMA CONTROL 2 machine: LAN RJ45 retrofit kit.

6.10.6 Prerequisites and accessories connection with PROFIBUS

Prerequisite: Option PROFIBUS master in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 Type/Option DP in SBU



Installation

6.10 Planning the wiring

When replacing a SIGMA AIR MANAGER with a SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0, you can connect the existing PROFIBUS network to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU without additional accessories.

The following accessories are required for the connecting machines with SIGMA CONTROL (see chapter 13.5 for material numbers):

- PROFIBUS cable
- For SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU: PROFIBUS connector
- For every machine with SIGMA CONTROL: PROFIBUS connector set for SIGMA CONTROL

6.10.7 Prerequisites for connection via floating relay contacts

ĵ

Connect a floating output from SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU in series with the existing pressure regulation (system pressure switch or electronic pressure regulation) of the machine.

Where compressors are connected via floating contacts, ensure the power supply is not overloaded by multiple units starting up simultaneously. You can stagger the start times by installing a timing relay in some compressors.

In compressed air stations with compressed air generation in operation mode *Manual*, compressors connected via floating relay contacts will start when the compressor pressure is below the compressor's cut-in pressure **and** one of the following conditions is met:

- The voltage supply at SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 and the compressor cuts out and returns simultaneously.
- The voltage supply at SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 cuts out, but not at the compressor.
- SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 fails.

Required equipment for machines to be connected to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 version	Machine equipment	
Up to 4 machines are connected via	a floating relay contacts to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU:	
SAM 4.0-4	One "external load control" input.	
SAM 4.0-8 SAM 4.0-16	An additional "Motor running" floating relay contact (normally open contact) is recommended.	
More than 4 machines are connected via floating relay contacts to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU:		
SAM 4.0-8 SAM 4.0-16	A "manual/automatic mode" / "LOAD/IDLE" control input with a system pressure switch in manual mode (-B1.1).	
	A "pressure switch in series with SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0" (-B1) or a pressure switch blow-off protection safety relief valve (-B6).	
	A "Motor running" floating relay contact (normally open con- tact).	

An "ON and no alarm" floating relay contact (normally open contact).

Tab. 40 Required equipment

If a machine is not prepared for connection to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0, it may possibly be retrofitted. Documents and parts for the retrofit are available separately.



6.11 Wiring

0][

 \mathcal{I}

DANGER

Contact with live electrical components can cause serious injury or death.

- Ensure that the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0/SBU and any external power sources are voltage-free.
- 1. Switch off the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0/SBU and any external power sources (all poles).
- 2. Lock them off.
- 3. Observe all recognized occupational safety regulations and applicable legal requirements when carrying out any work on the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0/SBU.
- Arrange for the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0/SBU to be connected to a power supply only by an authorised and qualified electrician in accordance with the national regulations of the local electricity provider.

Terminals on the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0/SBU that could still be subject to an external voltage, even when the power supply has been switched off, are to be marked as followed:

- Colored orange
- Label
- 5. Establish connections to the power supply, individual machines and devices in accordance with the wiring diagrams.

Avoid signal distortion by using suitable cabling and shielding.

Ensure a minimum distance of 3.94 in between cables with voltages up to 24 V (digital inputs, analog inputs, SIGMA NETWORK, PROFIBUS and, if applicable, relay outputs [only SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0: cable to Com module and user-end LAN]) and power cables (voltages above 60 V).

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0: The cover for the screw fixings (Fig. 5, (8)) features pre-punched passage options (right, left and bottom) for feeding the cables through. Attach cable ducts or trays in such a manner that these passage options may be utilized.

6.11.1 Creating the SIGMA NETWORK

1. Install the SIGMA NETWORK conductors.

If the bus connector and the SIGMA NETWORK cable do not match¹, contact issues may occur. These issues can also occur at a later point in time and significantly interrupt the compressor station operation.

¹⁾ Example of connector/cable combination that is not compatible: Connection of an 8-core line on a connector that is only intended for a 4-core line.

- Use the connectors and lines as recommended by KAESER in chapter 6.10.5.
- For details to create the SIGMA NETWORK, see Fig. 14.
- For details of the connection at the machine, see the description for "LAN RJ45 retrofit kit".
- For details of the connection at SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU, see chapter 6.12.
- 2. For maximal cable lengths, see chapter 6.10.4, "Notes to the electrical installation".



 $\hat{\mathcal{I}}$

6.11.1.1 Installing the RJ45 bus connector

Material: Use a FastConnect stripper for industrial Ethernet FC cables (IE FC Stripping Tool) for easy stripping of the SIGMA NETWORK conductors and to improve the connection between the cable and the plug. An Ethernet cable stripping tool can be ordered from KAESER under the material number 8.8294.0.

To connect to SIGMA NETWORK, you must connect the network subscribers according to SIGMA NETWORK conductor.

- Feed the network cable to the SIGMA NETWORK devices on both sides through one EMC ca-ble trench each.
- Use an RJ45 bus connector at both ends of the network cable.



Attaching the RJ45 connector



1	Orange	(4)	White
2	Blue	$\overline{\overline{5}}$	0.7 in
3	Yellow	6	0.2 in

1. Strip the insulation from the network cable (see Fig. 18).

Possible damage to the RJ45 connector and network cable if unlocked while under tension.

- Relieve tension on the RJ45 connector before unlocking.
- 2. Spread out the wires according to the color coding of the contact elements on the RJ45 connector (see Fig. 18).



Inserting the network cable wires Fig. 19

3. Insert the wires into the contact elements up to the limit stop.



6.11 Wiring



Fig. 20 Positioning the network cable

4. Position the network cable as shown (arrows, see Fig. 20).



Fig. 21 Close the cover of the RJ45 connector

- 4 RJ45 connector cover
 - 5 Rotatable locking piece
 - 5. Close the cover and manually rotate the locking piece clockwise as far as possible.



- Fig. 22 Rotate the locking piece as far as the limit stop
 - 6 RJ45 connector (view from cable end)
 - 7 Screwdriver



Installation

Wiring 6.11

6. Insert a screwdriver with 0.98 in blade width into the bore and rotate the locking piece clockwise until the limit stop.



In case of contact issues due to cable ends creating multiple contacts:

Cut off contacting cable ends and strip the network cable again.



The insulation displacement connectors in the plug connector may be disconnected and recontacted up to 10 times.

Result The RJ45 connector is correctly locked in place when the opening of the locking piece is aligned sideways and the side surfaces are flush with the plug.

6.11.2 Creating the PROFIBUS network

When replacing a SIGMA AIR MANAGER with a SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU, you can connect the existing PROFIBUS network to the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU. Material: Use a FastConnect stripper for PROFIBUS conductors (PROFIBUS FC Stripping Tool) for easy stripping of the PROFIBUS conductors and to improve the connection between the cable and the plug.

1. Install PROFIBUS cables.

- See Fig. 15 for details about the creation of a PROFIBUS network.
- See the installation instructions for the "PROFIBUS retrofit kit" for details about the ma-chine integration.
- 2. Switch the terminating resistor (3) (see Fig. 15) at both ends of the PROFIBUS to the ON position.
- See the wiring diagrams in the annex for cable types, cross-sections and maximum cable 3. lengths.

Connecting the PROFIBUS cable 6.11.2.1



Connecting the PROFIBUS cable Fig. 23

1)	Green conductor	(4)	0.5 in.
2	Red conductor	5	0.2 in.
3	0.2 in.	_	

- Strip the isolation from the PROFIBUS cable as shown. 1.
- 2. Connect the green conductor 1 to the green terminal "A" of the PROFIBUS plug.
- 3. Connect the red conductor (2) to the red terminal "B" of the PROFIBUS plug.



6.11 Wiring

6.11.2.2 Installing the PROFIBUS plug

NOTICE

Too tight of a bend radius can cause a defect in the PROFIBUS cables.

> Do not bend the PROFIBUS cable.

Inline subscribers of a PROFIBUS network:

Install the PROFIBUS plug at one of the inline subscribers to the PROFIBUS network:



C0241

Fig. 24 Installing the PROFIBUS plug

- 1. Connect two PROFIBUS cables (input and output)
- 2. Set the terminating resistor in the PROFIBUS plug to OFF.

Subscribers at the end of the PROFIBUS network

Install the PROFIBUS plug at a terminating subscriber and at the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0:



Fig. 25 Installing the terminating PROFIBUS plug

- 1. Connect one PROFIBUS cable (input only).
- 2. Set the terminating resistor in the PROFIBUS plug to ON.

6.11.3 Creating the compressor station via floating relay contacts

- 1. Use conventional wiring.
 - For details of creating a network with floating relay contacts, see Fig. 17.
- 2. Directly connect each machine with SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU.

6.11.3.1 Wiring modifications to the machine



Interruptions to the air supply caused by unsuppressed inductive loads connected to the relay outputs of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU, such as auxiliary contactors or solenoid valves.



Installation

6.12 Connecting lines

- 1. Suppress inductive loads with an RC interference suppressor.
- 2. Connect the interference suppressor in parallel directly at the coil (connections A1–A2). If the connections are inaccessible, in solenoid valves for example, the suppressor can also be connected to the corresponding terminals on the terminal strip.
- Use an RC interference suppressor suited to the coil voltage and apparent holding power, see chapter 13.5.

Machine with "external load signal" control input

KAESER machines built in 1990 and after with terminal 32W:



Fig. 26 Remove the wire jumper.

Remove the jumper between the terminals (terminals 32W and 21 or 18) to allow sequencing.

Machines without terminal 32W

- 1. Fit terminal 32W in the terminal strip.
- 2. Disconnect the conductor of the main pressure switch cable connected to terminal 18.
- 3. Disconnect the conductor of the main pressure switch cable connected to terminal 21.
- 4. Connect the conductor to terminal 32W.

6.11.3.2 Machine with one control input for "Operating mode Manual/Automatic" / LOAD/IDLE

KAESER machines built in 1990 and after

If a jumper is connected between the terminals for manual operation [-X1 (W) 20 or 17 and -X1 (W) 24 (W)] on the terminal strip for connection of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU, then it must be removed. A more precise designation of the terminals is given in the electrical diagrams for the machine.

► Remove wire jumper if necessary.

6.12 Connecting lines

6.12.1 Wiring the control cabinet

Precondition The control cabinet is properly attached to the wall as described in chapter 6.6. The base plate is freely accessible.

Wire the control cabinet as described below.



ון

6.12.2 Connecting the equipotential bonding

- 1. Connect the housing to user-supplied equipotential bonding at the corresponding equipotential bonding connection.
- 2. Keep the connection as short as possible.
- 3. Use a ground band or cable with a cross-section of at least 16 mm².

6.12.3 Feeding cables and connecting the shielding

Tips for connecting cables:

- As a first step, unscrew the coupling rings of all required cable glands and remove the plastic plugs. Keep the coupling rings nearby. For metal cable glands, remove the plastic inserts and place them nearby.
- Start from the rear (base plate) to place conductors into the cable glands.
- You need a conductor length of approx. 12 in. in the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 control cabinet (two fingers width longer than the front edge of the plate with the cable glands).
- After feeding each conductor, rotate the corresponding cable gland until the conductor is properly seated and the gland is sealed. The rotating becomes very difficult when many cable glands are filled.



Fig. 27 Feeding cable and connecting the shielding

- Metallic cable glands for shielded cables (1) (analog inputs, SIGMA NETWORK, PROFIBUS, cable to the COM module)
- Plastic cable glands for unshielded cables 2 (digital inputs, digital outputs)
- 3 Equipotential bond connection (stud)
- Network connecting line
- (4) 5 Conductor to user LAN
 - Plastic cable glands for fiber optic cable (FOC) [only in option E4, E5, E6]
- 1. Feed shielded cables (analog inputs, SIGMA NETWORK, PROFIBUS, cables to the COM module) through the metallic cable glands [1]. Connect the shielding as described below.

6



Installation

6.12 Connecting lines

6

fiber optic cable (FOC)
 Fiber optic cable without insertion tool: Feed the fiber-optic cable through the plastic cable gland 6.

Fiber optic cable with insertion tool:

- Remove plastic cable gland (6).
- Unscrew the insertion tool from the divider of the fiber optic cable
- Feed fiber optic cable and divider through the metal plate into the SAM 4.0 control cabinet
- Attach divider with previously removed counter nut.
- 3. Feed the conductor to the user's LAN through the plastic cable gland with EMC brass brush (5). Connect the shielding as described below.
- 4. Feed the network connecting line through the plastic cable gland (4).
- 5. Feed other unshielded cables (digital inputs, digital outputs) through the plastic cable glands (2).
- 6. After feeding the conductor, rotate each cable gland until the conductor is properly seated and the gland is sealed.

Connecting the shielding

At the control cabinet:



- Fig. 28 Connecting the shielding
 - 1. Strip off the cable insulation by about 0.4 in. where the cable passes through the cable gland.
 - 2. Push the cable through the metal cable gland on the control cabinet until the stripped section snaps in and contacts the ground clamp in the cable gland.

Connecting the shielding for the user's LAN

- 1. Strip off the cable insulation by about 0.4 in.at the terminal.
- 2. Feed the conductor or patch cable (with plug) through the plastic cable gland with EMC brass brush (Fig. 27 (5)) until the stripped part of the conductor touches the brass brush.


6.12 Connecting lines

6.12.4 Laying the cables in the control cabinet



Fig. 29 Cable routing in the control cabinet

- Cables with voltages up to 24 V (digital inputs, analogue inputs, SIGMA NETWORK, PROFIBUS, cables to the COM module and the user's LAN, relay outputs, if provided)
- 2 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 control cabinet
- 3 Cables with 115/230 V AC voltage (common supply line, relay outputs, if provided)
- 1. Use cable ties to bundle all 115/230 V AC cables and keep them separate from all other cables.
- Install the bus cables to the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal so that they will not be kinked by opening and closing the cover.

6.12.5 Connecting the cables

- 1. Make the connections to terminals and interfaces as detailed in the attached wiring diagram.
- 2. Connect external sensors according to the wiring diagram in the annex.
- For installing the RJ45 bus connector, see chapter 6.11.1. Insert RJ45 bus connectors on both sides of the connection into the corresponding socket until it locks into place.
- For installing the the PROFIBUS plug, see chapter 6.11.2. Mount PROFIBUS plugs on both sides of the connection and fasten by screwing in the two screws.
- Connect fiber optic cable (FOC): The fiber optic cable connection between the switches is a crossover connection. RX ----- fiber optic cable -1- ------ TX

TX ----- fiber optic cable -2- ----- RX

User Manual SIGMA AIR MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The number (-1- or -2-) is printed on the insulation of the fiber optic cable ends.

Connect fiber optic cable to both sides of the connection

- 1. Connect the first fiber optic cable as described below to the bottom socket "TX" on the switch.
- 2. Connect the second fiber optic cable as described below to the top socket "RX" on the switch.



6 Installation 6.12 Connecting lines

Connect fiber optic cable by inserting the ST plug into the socket



Fig. 30 ST plug with fiber optic cable

- 1. Remove the protective cap from the fiber optic cable.
- 2. Looking at the fiber optic cable 1 from the front, position the small nipple on the inner metal ring 2 on the left by turning the plug.
- 3. Position the grooves on the outer metal ring ④ at the top and at the bottom by turning the metal ring ③.
- 4. Attach the fiber optic cable. If the small nipple has been positioned correctly this should work quite easily.
- 5. Lock the outer metal ring (3) by sliding it to the front against the spring tension and turning it to the right. Once locked, the outer ring springs back.

6.12.6 Installing the control cabinet

- Material Control cabinet key type: Two-way key 3mm (0.12 in.) Hexagon spanner, 4mm (0.16 in.) width Open-end spanner, 6mm (0.24 in.) width Diagonal cutter
- Precondition The base plate of the control cabinet is properly attached to the wall (see chapter 6.6). The control cabinet is fully wired (see chapter 6.12).





6.12 **Connecting lines**



(2) Base plate

Fig. 31

- <u>(</u>3) M 6x16, SW6 toothed nut
- (4) M 6x16, SW4 screw

- Spagnolet 8
 - Cable gland cover
- 1. Attach the control cabinet cover 1 on the base plate 2 as shown below.
 - Fasten the cables leading from the base plate into the control cabinet cover (PE, SIGMA NETWORK, 24 VDC) to the base plate, ensuring that they are above the plate with the cable glands and do not protrude out the side or bottom.
 - Insert the control cabinet cover, moving it from the top and front towards the base plate and hanging it on the two screws [4].
 - Fold the control cabinet cover downward, ensuring that no cables are pinched.
- 2. Install the control cabinet cover 1 with two nuts 3 on the base plate 2.
- 3. Tighten both screws [4] and both nuts [3].
- 4. Connect the protective conductor attached to the terminal strip to the PE connector in the cable gland cover 1.
- Ensure the proper seating of the protective conductor. 5.
- 6. Connect the internal cables leading from the base plate (2) to the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal (5). Place these conductors mostly parallel to the cover bottom side to ensure that they won't be pinched when the cover is closed.
- 7. Close the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal [5].
- 8. Lock the spagnolet (6) at the cable gland cover(1) with the control cabinet key.



Installation

6.13 Setting up the machines



- Fig. 32 Remove cable insert knock-outs / Attach edge protection
 - ⑧Cable gland cover10Diagonal cutter⑨Cable insert knock-outs11Edge protector
 - Remove cable insert knock-out(s) (9) from the cover(8). Use a diagonal cutter (10) to cut through the attachment point of the pre-stamped knock-outs and twist back and forth until the knockout comes loose.
 - 10. Position a piece of the supplied edge protector 11 over the resulting opening.
 - 11. Push the cover for the cable glands (8) from the front into the rubber holes in the base plate.

6.13 Setting up the machines

NOTICE

Damage to drive motors can occur when the permissible motor starting frequency is exceeded on machines without idle control (piston compressors, blowers).

- Set the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 pressure band to a width which ensures that the switching frequency is not exceeded.
- ► If necessary, increase the capacity of the air receiver.
- ► Note the settings made here in the table in the annex (see chapter 13.4).
- Precondition The settings described in this section must be entered in full for every machine to ensure faultless operation. Make sure that the compressed air system remains in operation should the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 fail.
 - Carry out settings as detailed in this manual.



6.13.1 Integration with SIGMA NETWORK

The prescribed procedure for the setting of SIGMA CONTROL 2 machines is described in the corresponding operating manuals.

Note the settings made here in the table in the annex (see chapter 13.4).

Only use the current software version for SIGMA CONTROL 2.

Set the IP address of the network subscribers as follows: SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0: IP address = 169.254.100. "Machine number +102"

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 does **not** automatically assign the IP addresses to the network users. Either the wrong machine or no machine is controlled if an incorrect IP address is assigned.

1. Enter system pressure pB (p₂ and set as default for "Manual mode pressure".

Simultaneous activation of the machines in manual mode.

- In manual mode, the pressure set point of each machine should be staggered by 4.4 psi to prevent all machines from starting together. The stagger time for station operation must be set. Suggestions for these settings are found in the annex (see chapter 13.4.2).
- 2. Activate and setting up automatic restart after a power failure.
- 3. Configure the operation at the SIGMA NETWORK.

6.13.2 Integration with PROFIBUS

The correct procedure for setting up SIGMA CONTROL machines is described in the corresponding operating manuals.

Note the settings made here in the table in the annex (see chapter 13.4).

Set the slave numbers of the PROFIBUS devices as follows:

- SIGMA CONTROL Slave No. = Machine number +2
- SIGMA CONTROL 2: Slave No. = Machine number +102
- 0 11

2

Either the wrong machine or no machine is controlled if an incorrect slave number is entered.

1. Enter system pressure pB (p₂ and set as default for "Manual mode pressure".

Ĩ

Simultaneous activation of the machines in manual mode.

- In manual mode, the pressure set point of each machine should be staggered by 4.4 psi to prevent a simultaneous start of all machines. The stagger time for station operation must be set. Suggestions for these settings are found in the annex (see chapter 13.4.2).
- 2. Activate and set up automatic restart after a power failure.
- 3. Configure PROFIBUS operation (see Table: Parameters for bus faults).
- 4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 for any further machines.

The following settings are recommended as parameters for bus alarms:

Parameters	Value	Meaning
Start td:	40.0 s	Maximum period that the machine waits for a signal from the PROFIBUS after return of the power supplies. If no signal arrives before the period ends, the machine switches to self-control.



6.13 Setting up the machines

Parameters	Value	Meaning
Time-out	5.00 s	Period after which the machine switches to self-control if a fault occurs in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.
Restart	Auto	Not at SIGMA CONTROL 2. The machine automatically connects again when the PROFIBUS runs again after a bus alarm.
Restart	Man.	Not at SIGMA CONTROL 2. After a bus alarm the machine remains under its own internal control until it is connected to the bus again when the «Remote control» key is pressed.

Tab. 41 Parameter for bus alarm

6.13.3 Linking via floating relay contact

Precondition The machines are provided with the floating relay contacts required and they are wired up (see chapter 6.10.7).

➤ Note the settings made here in the table in the annex (see chapter 13.4).



Rotary screw compressors always have an EMERGENCY mode. Piston compressors and blowers may or may not have this facility.

6.13.3.1 Compressed air station with compressed air generation in the Manual operating mode

- In the *Automatic* mode SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 assumes the LOAD / IDLE control.
- In the *Manual* mode, the machines run via the internal pressure control.

Machine with "External load control" input

When the machine is linked, the machine pressure control (system pressure switch (-B1) or electronic pressure control) remains in operation. The system automatically runs in the *Local operation* mode via these pressure switches if power to the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 fails or the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 itself malfunctions, ensuring a further supply of compressed air.

► Set the pressure control.

Further information For more information about the suggested settings for the pressure control, see Annex, chapter 13.4.1.

Machine with one control input for "Operating mode Manual/Automatic" / LOAD/Idle

A "blow off protection safety relief valve" pressure switch (-B6) or a "pressure switch in series to the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 load output" (-B1) is fitted in the machines to prevent one of the following:

- The machine is overloaded.
- The safety relief valve responds due to:
 - switching points set too high
 - defective master controller

- excessive pressure loss between the machine and the pressure transducer of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.



6

6.13 Setting up the machines

- Set the "pressure switch in series to the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 load output" (-B1). See chapter 13.4.1 for recommended settings.
- Set the "pressure switch for manual operation (-B1.1) in sequence to ensure that the machines cut in after another. See chapter 13.4.2 in the Annex for recommended settings.

6.13.3.2 Compressed air station without compressed air generation in the Manual operating mode

Blowers and reciprocating compressors are not fitted with pressure switches that could ensure compressed air generation in the *Manual* mode.

When these machines are connected, the IDLE switching is controlled by SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.

ĥ

- This station will stop delivering compressed air if SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 fails.
- ► Take suitable application-specific measures.



7 Initial Start-up

7.1

 $\frac{\circ}{1}$

7.1 Commissioning – overview

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is centrally configured with the "Engineering Base" planning tool. "Engineering Base" creates a configuration for easy import in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0. No time-consuming commissioning and configuration on-site. Just a few settings such as date and time, must be entered at the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.

topic	Description
First activation	Chapter 7.2 "First activation"
Setting the language	Chapter 7.3 "Language"
User log-in	Chapter 7.4 "User log-in"
Importing the configuration	Chapter 7.5 "Importing the configuration"
Setting the time zone, date and time	Chapter 7.6 "Date and time"
Setting the Units	Chapter 7.7 "Units"
Key lock	Chapter 7.8 "Key lock"
Setting up the display	Chapter 7.9 "Display"
Menu behaviour	Chapter 7.10 "Menu behaviour"
SAM 4.0 terminal settings	Chapter 7.11 "SAM 4.0 terminal"
E-mail settings	Chapter 7.12 "E-mail"
SIGMA NETWORK I/O	Chapter 7.13 "SIGMA NETWORK I/O"
PROFIBUS	Chapter 7.14 "PROFIBUS"
SIGMA NETWORK	Chapter 7.15 "SIGMA NETWORK"
Control	Chapter 7.16 "Control"
Timer control	Chapter 7.17 "Timer control"
Data backup	Chapter 7.18 "Data backup"
Control technology	Chapter 7.19 "Control technology"
Activating SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0	Chapter 7.20 "SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0" Activating

Tab. 42 Commissioning - overview

7.2 First activation

Precondition

dition No personnel are working on the machine.

All maintenance doors and removable panels are properly installed, closed, and secured. All installation activities and wiring tasks have been properly and completely performed according

to chapter 6"Installation"

The ambient conditions as described in Chapter 5 "Installation and Operating Conditions" are met.



7.2 First activation

NOTICE

There is risk of damage to the compressed air supply through premature changeover to automatic mode.

 Press «Automatic» (a) only when all settings required for set-up (see chapter 7 "Initial Start-up") have been made.



Fig. 33 Keys on the operating panel

1. Switch on the power supply for SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 at the user's power supply disconnecting device.

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 starts. The boot-up is finished when the "Status" menu appears (after about 3 minutes).

Sign	Operating element	Key illumination	Function
	«Remote control» key	Green	Activation and deactivation of the remote opera- tion.
\bigcirc	«Timer control» key	Green	Switches the time control on or off.
ଡ଼	«Automatic» key	Green	Switch the station between manual and automatic mode.
U	«Compressed air generation» key	Green/red	Compressed air station activation (air supply) or deactivation (ATTENTION: no air supply!)

- Tab. 43 Keys on the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 operating panel
 - 2. Press «Compressed air generation» **(**key. The system returns a confirmation prompt.
 - Confirm with Yes.
 The «Compressed air generation» wkey lights up green.



Language

- 4. Ensure that SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is set to *Manual* mode. The «Automatic» @ key does **not** illuminate.
- 5. If the «Automatic» @ key illuminates green, press again this key for the illumination to extinguish.
 - Compressed air station without compressed air generation in the *Manual* operating mode do not deliver any compressed air (chapter 6.4 "Installation").
 - Compressed air stations with compressed air generation in the *Manual* operating mode run via their internal pressure control (see Chapter 6.4 "Installation").

7.3 Language

 $\frac{\circ}{1}$

7.3

You can choose and set the user interface language for the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic	101 psi	Observation Access Mode
	Configuration Language		Status
	Language en_US English 📀		Messages
			Monitoring
		SAM 4.0 terminal	Energy & costs
		E-mail	Maint.
		Units	Control
		Key lock	SAM 4.0 Logic
		User administrati- on	Timer control
		Date and time	Initial Start-up
		Display	Configuration
0		Menu behaviour	
0.4-0200		Language	Contact i

- Fig. 34 Language menu
 - Press the Configuration Language key. The Language menu displays the currently set language.
 - Touch the Symbol.
 - The available languages are displayed in a list.
 - Select the desired Language (country) combination.
 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 loads and automatically displays the selected language.



When you set the language, you automatically adjust the display formats for date and time (see chapter 7.6 "Date and time") and the units (see chapter 7.7 "Units"). You can manually change these settings.



The user menus of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 are currently set to a language not understood by the user. For this reason, the user is unable find the Language Settings menu.

 The Configuration – Language keys are arranged at the bottom of the function selection list (keys on the right display side) (see illustration).

7.4 User log-in

With your SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0, you received two RFID Equipment Cards. They authorize the user to log on to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 and make or change settings.



Fig. 35 RFID Equipment Card

- 1 RFID Equipment Card
- 2 Card number on the back
- 1. Remove the RFID Equipment Card from the plastic sleeve.
- 2. Record the number shown on the back of the RFID Equipment Card and keep it at a secure location.

7.4.1 Logging on with the RFID Equipment Card



Fig. 36 RFID reader

- (1) RFID Equipment Card
- 3 RFID reader
- 4 Access Mode menu element
- 1. Hold the RFID Equipment Card 1 directly in front of RFID reader 3. The log-on data are read. If the system recognizes the RFID Equipment Card, it returns a message 5. The message contains information about User name and Access level.



User log-in



Fig. 37 Logged on

2. Press Next to confirm the prompt.

The message window closes. The user is now logged on in the *Observation* mode. This is shown in the *Access Mode* (4) menu element.

To switch to the *Configuration* mode, repeat this process from Step 1.
 The user is now logged on in the *Configuration* mode. This is shown in the *Access Mode* (4) menu element.

7.4.2 User log out



Fig. 38 Information menu

- To log out, touch the Access Mode 4 menu element. A message is displayed.
- 2. Press Log out 7 to log out.



The access level will automatically return to "Logged out" after 10 minutes without user intervention. The time duration is set with the *Timeout for STANDBY* parameter in the menu "Configuration" – "Display".

7.4.3 User administration

Use the *User administration* menu to add or delete users, change passwords and edit the access levels of registered users.

7.4.3.1 User administration menu

The menu *User administration – User list* displays a list of all users registered in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 Configuration (see 7.4 "User Login" section).



7.4 User log-in

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MAN	AGER 4.0 4	Automatic	101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
	Configuration User name	User administratio	e Valid until (Month/Y	st ′ear) Status	Status
	K00007820	2 Custo 2 Custo	mer 06/2016 mer 08/2016	Active	Monitoring
	K00007860	2 Custo	mer 05/2016	Active	Energy & costs
					Maint.
					Control
					SAM 4.0 Logic
					Timer control
				•	Configuration
2		Create r	iew user		
07-C258	Edit sel	ected user	Delete s	elected user	Contact

Fig. 39 Menu User administration – User list

1. Press the Configuration – User administration key.

The menu User administration – User list displays the registered users in a table:

Parameter	Meaning
User name	The user name is determined by logging on with the RFID Equipment Card. It comprises of letters and digits, printed on the back of the RFID Equipment Card.
Level	Access level of the corresponding user account.
Туре	<i>Customer</i> type user accounts can have maximum access level 2. They are created using RFID Equipment Cards or by other <i>Customer</i> type users and are valid without time limit.
Valid until (Month/Year)	When adding a user account, you usually specify a date of expiration for this ac- count. <i>Customer</i> type user accounts however, remain valid without time limit.
Status	Indicates the active or inactive status of a user account.

- Tab. 44 Menu User administration User list
 - 2. Select a user account by tapping it.
 - The selected user account is highlighted.

7.4.3.2 Edit user

You can edit selected user accounts.

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 Configuration (see 7.4 "User Login" section).

 Touch the desired user in the User administration – User list menu. The selected user account is highlighted.



7.4

2. Press the Edit selected user key.

The menu User administration - Edit selected user is displayed:

Parameter	Meaning
User name	Name of the selected user account.
Туре	For example, the type Customer
Expiry date (MM/ YYYY)	Expiration date for the selected user account. User accounts of the <i>Customer</i> type however, remain valid without time limit.
New password	Enter your own password for the user log-on. For security reasons, you must
Repeat new password	enter the password twice.
Access level	Access level of the corresponding user account.
Status	By default, the user account is <i>Active</i> . However, you can set it to <i>Inactive</i> . In this case, the user no longer has any authorizations.

Tab. 45 Edit selected user

- 3. Enter a password in the *New password* field. The password must have between 6 and 16 characters. Possible characters are a...z, A...Z and 0...9.
- 4. Enter the same password in the *Repeat new password* field.
- 5. If required, set the status *Active* or *Inactive*.
- 6. Press the Accept changes key.

7.4.3.3 Creating a new user

An authorized user can add other users.

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 Configuration (see 7.4 "User Login" section).



4 User log-in

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4	Automatic 101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
	Configuration User administration Cr	reate new user	Status
	User name :		Messages
	Туре:		Monitoring
	Expiry date (MM/YYYY):		Energy & costs
	New password:		Maint.
	Repeat new password:		Control
	Access level:	1	SAM 4.0 Logic
	Status:	Active	Timer control
			Initial Start-up
			Configuration
07-02684	Cancel	Create new user	Contact

Fig. 40 Create new user menu

- 1. Press the Configuration User administration key.
- Press the Create new user key.
 The menu User administration Create new user is displayed.
- 3. Touch the *User name* field. Use the virtual keyboard to enter the user name and confirm with *Accept*.
- 4. Enter a new password in the *New password* field. The password must have between 6 and 16 characters. Possible characters are a...z, A...Z and 0...9.
- 5. Enter the same password in the Repeat new password field.
- 6. Set the access level in the Access level field.
- 7. Set the status to Active.
- 8. Press the Create new user key.

7.4.3.4 Deleting a user

An authorized user can delete user accounts.

- Precondition Login with Access Level 2 Configuration (see 7.4 "User Login" section).
 - Touch the desired user in the User administration User list menu. The selected user account is highlighted.
 - 2. Press the Delete selected user key. The selected user account is deleted.

7.4.3.5 Create the master RFID Equipment Card

If SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is controlling several KAESER machines with SIGMA CONTROL 2 it may make sense to create a master RFID Equipment Card with which you can log onto SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 and all machines.



- Precondition The RFID Equipment Card delivered with SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 and at least one additional teachable RFID Equipment Card are available.
 - 1. Hold the RFID Equipment Card 1 directly in front of RFID reader 3. The log-on data are read. If the system recognizes the RFID Equipment Card, it returns a message 5.



Fig. 41 Logged on

2. Press Next to confirm the prompt.

The message window closes.

The user is now logged on in the Observation mode.

3. Within 10 minutes, hold the master RFID Equipment Card to be taught directly in front of the RFID reader (3).

If the system successfully recognizes the RFID Equipment Card, it displays a message that a new user has been registered.

4. Repeat the previous steps for all machines with SIGMA CONTROL 2.

7.5 Import configuration

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is centrally configured with the "Engineering Base" planning tool. "Engineering Base" creates configuration files for easy import in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0. No timeconsuming commissioning and configuration on-site.

> Perform the following actions in the sequence described below:

7.5.1 Switching on manual operation

- 1. Ensure that SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is set to *Manual* mode. The «Automatic» @ key does not illuminate.
- 2. If the «Automatic» e key illuminates green, press this key.



The *Manual* mode can cause large pressure swings in the compressed air system.

Stations with machines without system pressure switch will deliver no compressed air in the *Manual* mode or if the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 fails.

The system returns a confirmation prompt.

3. Confirm prompt with the Yes key.

The «Automatic» @ key no longer illuminates in green.

The machines are under the control of their own internal controllers.



7.5.2 Insert the SD card.

Precondition An SD card with the correct "Engineering Base" file for the commissioning of the relevant compressed air station is available.



- Fig. 42 Insert the SD card.
 - (1) X3: Slot for SD card reader
 - 2 SD card
 - 3 Bevelled SD card edge
 - 1. Open the cover of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal (see chapter 6.6 "Installing the control cabinet").
 - 2. Push the SD card into the X3 slot until it latches. The bevelled edge of the card must point to the right side towards the terminal (see chapter 7.5"Inserting the SD card").
 - 3. Close and latch the cover of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal (see chapter 6.12.6).

7.5.3 Importing the configuration file

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 Configuration (see 7.4 "User Login" section).



7.5 Import configuration

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8 Automatic 101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
	Initial Start-up Import configuration SD card inserted Yes	Status
	SD card detected Yes Configuration file found Yes	Messages
	Import sam_config.zip	Energy & costs
		Maint.
		Control
		Timer control
		Initial Start-up
		Configuration
07-0256		Contact 1

Fig. 43 Import configuration menu

1. Press the Initial Start-up – Import configuration key.

The Import configuration menu displays the status as follows:

- SD card inserted An SD card has been physically inserted
- SD card detected An SD card has been electronically detected
- Configuration file found A valid "Engineering Base" configuration file has been detected
- 2. If Yes is displayed in all three lines, press Import sam_config.zip.

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 imports the "Engineering Base" configuration file and reports completion.

3. Follow the instructions on the screen to activate the configuration.



After reading the configuration file, SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 will automatically restart.

 Document the configuration file data in the "Engineering Base Configuration" table in the annex (see chapter 13.3.3"Engineering Base configuration").

7.5.4 Activating automatic mode

- Press the «Automatic» @ key. The system returns a confirmation prompt.
- 2. Confirm prompt with the Yes key.

The «Automatic» ekey lights up green. SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 assumes control of the compressed air station.



7.6 Date and time

In SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 you must set the time zone in which the device is located as well as the current date and time. This is required to ensure proper functioning of the machine controller, messages, logs, and analysis.

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 Configuration (see Chapter 7.4 "User Login")

> Enter the settings in the sequence described below:

7.6.1 Set the time zone

Set the time zone in which the device is located in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 to ensure that automatic changes, for example from standard time to daylight savings time, are executed properly.

1. Press the Configuration – Date and time key.

The Date and time menu is displayed

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4	Automatic	101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
	Configuration Date and time	e		Status
	Date :	11/12/2016		Messages
	Time:	10:19:26 AM		Monitoring
	Time zone :	US/Central		Energy & costs
	Automatically update time:	Yes 📀		Maint.
	Time server address:	192.168.111.132		Control
	Time format :	hh:mm:ss AM/PM		SAM 4.0 Logic
	Date format :	MM/TT/JJJJ 🛇		Timer control
				Initial Start-up
				Configuration
07-02517				Contact

Fig. 44 Date and time menu

- 2. In the Automatically update timeline, tap the Symbol.
- 3. Tap the *No* option.



7.6 Date and time

Set the	time zone
•	
Chile	Amsterdam
Etc	Andorra
Europe	Athens
Indian	Belfast
Mexico	Belgrade
•	
 Selected time	zone: Europe/Amsterdam
Cancel	Apply

Fig. 45 Set the time zone menu

Tap the input field in line *Time zone*.
 The *Set the time zone* menu is displayed

Element	Meaning
Arrow keys	Move up/down in the list
Left column	List of time zones
Right column	List of places
Selected time zone	Selected time zone
Cancel	Settings not saved
Apply	Settings saved

- Tab. 46Meaning of the menu elementsSet the time zone
 - 5. Tap the left column to select the desired time zone. Use the arrow keys to scroll through the list.
 - 6. Tap the right column to select the desired location. Use the arrow keys to scroll through the list. The currently selected time zone is displayed in the *Selected time zone* row.
 - 7. Press Apply to apply the selected time zone.

0][

The change between daylight savings time and standard time is automatic and follows the rules for the selected time zone.

From the list, select the location best matching the desired time zone.

Use the *Etc* option, to set the time zone in the range between GMT-14...+12.

7.6.2 Set the date

- Press the Configuration Date and time key. The *Date and time* menu is displayed
- 2. Tap the Symbol in the *Automatically update time* line.
- 3. Tap the No option.



7.6 Date and time

7

	Set the da	te
Year	Month	Day
2016	1	29
		Annh
Ca		Арріу

Fig. 46 Set the date menu

Tap the input field in line *Date*.
 The *Set the date* menu is displayed

Element	Meaning
Year	Set year
Month	Set month
Day	Set day
Arrow keys	Set value
Cancel	Settings not saved
Apply	Settings saved

Tab. 47 Meaning of the Set the date menu elements

- 5. Use the arrow keys to select the current date:
 - Year
 - Month
 - Day
- Save the selected date using the Apply button.
 The *Date and time* menu displays the selected date for review.

7.6.3 Set the time

- Press the Configuration Date and time key. The *Date and time* menu is displayed
- 2. Tap the Symbol in the Automatically update time line.
- 3. Tap the No option.

	Set the time	
Hour	Minute	Sekunde
1 5 V	3 4 : ▼ ▼	0 0
Cancel		Apply

Fig. 47 Set the time menu



4. Tap the input field in line *Time*. The *Set the time* menu is displayed

Element	Meaning
Hour	Set hours
Minute	Set minutes
Second	Set seconds
Arrow keys	Set value
Cancel	Settings not saved
Apply	Settings saved

- Tab. 48 Meaning of the menu elements Set the time
 - 5. Use the arrow keys to set the current time:
 - Hour
 - Minute
 - 6. Press Apply to save the selected time.

The clock will run at the selected time setting and will be accurate to the second.

The Date and time menu displays the set time for review.



Check the time for deviations on a regular basis (at least once a year) and make adjustments if necessary.

Document the time setting in the "Time settings" table in the annex (see chapter 13.3.4).

7.6.4 Automatically update time

If SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is connected to the customer network, you can set access to an SNTP time server available in the Internet or a local Intranet. SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 then automatically imports the date and time settings and ensures continuous synchronization of the internal clock with the external time server.

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 *Configuration* (see Chapter 7.4 "User Login")

The time server's IP address is known. Request the required information from your IT department.

- Press the Configuration Date and time key. The *Date and time* menu is displayed
- Tap the input field in line *Time server address*. A virtual keypad is displayed.
- 3. Enter the IP address of the time server.
- 4. Enter by tapping "√".
- 5. In the Automatically update timeline, tap the 🛇 symbol.
- 6. Tap the Yes option.



Enter the IP address of the time server in the "Time settings" table in the annex (see chapter 13.3.4).

Result Access to the selected time server is active. The internal clock of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is synchronized.



7.6.5 Set display formats

Depending on the selected language, the system automatically sets the units and the time and date formats. You can manually change these settings.

Setting the time format

- Press the Configuration Date and time key. The *Date and time* menu is displayed
- 2. Tap the Symbol in the *Time format* line.
- 3. Tap the required option.

Time format	Example
HH:MM:SS	14:33:51
HH:MM:SS am/pm	2:33:51 PM

Tab. 49Setting the *Time format*

Setting the date format

- 1. In the *Date format*line, tap the 🛇 symbol.
- 2. Tap the required option.

Date format	Example
YYYY-MM-DD	2016-09-26
MM/DD/YYYY	09/26/2016
DD.MM.YYYY	26.09.2016

Tab. 50 Setting the Date format

7.7 Units

You can adjust the units for some parameters in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 to the standards in the country of installation. The system automatically calculates and displays the correct units.



When you change the display language (see chapter 7.3 "Language"), the system automatically changes the unit settings matching the language.



Key lock

7.8

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8	Automatic		101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
	Configuration Units				Status
	Pressure:	psi	۲		Messages
	Volumetric flow rate:	CFM	٢		Monitoring
	Volume:	cu.ft	۲		Energy & costs
	Power:	kW	٢		Maint.
	Specific power:	kW/CFM	۲		Control
	Temperature:	°F	0		SAM 4.0 Logic
					Timer control
					Initial Start-up
					Configuration
07-02579					Contact

Fig. 48 Units menu

 Press the Configuration – Units key. The Units menu displays the currently set units.

Parameter	Units	
Pressure	bar, psi, MPa, mbar, at, "Hg	
Volumetric flow rate	m³/min, m³/h, CFM	
Volume	m³, cu.ft, USgal	
Power	kW, W	
Specific power	kW/(m³/min), kW/(100*CFM)	
Temperature	°С, °F, К	
The factory-set units depend on the "language" set.		

Tab. 51 Units

- Touch the Symbol in the row of the parameter to be changed. The available units are displayed in a list.
- Select the desired unit.
 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 saves the selected unit and uses it for all display values referenced.

7.8 Key lock

The four keys on the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 "operator panel" can be locked against unauthorized access.

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 Configuration (see Chapter 7.4 "User Login")



7.9 Display

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic	101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
	Configuration Key lock		Status
	Compressed air production key : Unlocked		Messages
	Automatic mode key : 🕑 Unlocked 📀		Monitoring
	Timer key : 🕑 Unlocked 📀		Energy & costs
	Remote key : Unlocked		Maint.
			Control
			SAM 4.0 Logic
			Timer control
			Initial Start-up
			Configuration
07-C2627			Contact i



- Press the Configuration Key lock key.
 - The locked/unlocked status of the four keys is displayed in the Key lock menu.
- 2. Touch the \bigotimes symbol in the line of the key to be changed.
 - The available options are displayed.
 - Unlocked
 - Key lock
- 3. Select the desired option.

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 automatically saves the selected option.

If an attempt is made to actuate a locked key, a corresponding note is displayed.

7.9 Display

ון

You can adjust the display brightness and the timing of the screen saver.

Precondition

Login with Access Level 2 Configuration (see Chapter 7.4 "User Login")



7.10 Menu behaviour

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi	
	Configuration Display	Status
	Brightness ON (%): 100 \$	Messages
	Timeout for STANDBY (min): 10	Monitoring
	Display now in STANDBY	Energy & costs
	Display: Activate cleaning mode	Maint.
		Control
		SAM 4.0 Logic
		Timer control
		Initial Start-up
		Configuration
		Contact

- Fig. 50 Display menu
 - Press the Configuration Display key. The *Display* menu is displayed

Parameter	Meaning
Brightness ON	Set display brightness in ON mode (10–100%)
Brightness STANDBY	Set display brightness for the screen saver (10–100%)
Timeout for STANDBY	Waiting time in minutes before the screen saver is activated

Tab. 52 Display

- 2. Use the slide controls to set the brightness and the waiting time.
- 3. Press the key Display now in STANDBY to check display brightness setting in standby mode.

Display: cleaning mode

To clean the touch screen, you can briefly disable the touch functionality. This will prevent the accidental selection of touch functions.

- Press the Display: Activate cleaning mode key. The function *Display: cleaning mode* is active for 20 seconds. A countdown appears.
- 2. You can continue cleaning the screen as long as the countdown is visible.

7.10 Menu behaviour

The status of the compressed air device can be displayed with symbols in the header. As a result, the current operating mode of the machines is visible at a glance in every SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 menu.



7.10 Menu behaviour

	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4	Automatic	;	101 psi	Observation ACCESS MODE
	Configuration Menu behaviou	r			Status
	Show air producers in header:	No	٥		Messages
	Standard menu:	Status Stat	ion 오		Monitoring
	Station name:				Energy & costs
					Mntnce
					Control
					SAM 4.0 Logic
					Time control
					Initial Start-up
					Configuration
07-C2803					Contact

Fig. 51 Menu behaviour menu

- 1. Press the Configuration Menu behaviour key.
- The Menu behaviour menu is displayed
- 2. Tap the Symbol in the Show air producers in header line.



Fig. 52 Status display of the compressed air device in the header

3. Tap the Yes option.

The header displays a symbol indicating the status of each compressed air device.

Symbol	Meaning
	Machine in READY mode
	Machine in IDLE mode

08-C2804



7.10 Menu behaviour

Symbol	Meaning
	Machine in LOAD mode
	Machine cannot be controlled remotely (local mode)
	Machine has fault messages
	Machine cannot be reached (communication malfunction)
Symbol greyed out	Machine is deselected.

Tab. 53 Meaning of symbols in the header



The number of the corresponding compressed air device is shown in the symbol representing it.

7.10.1 Set default display

After a while with no user input, a status menu appears. The desired menu can be configured.

Precondition The *Menu behaviour* menu is displayed locally

1. Tap the Symbol in the *Standard menu* line.

The available options are displayed.

- Status Overview Pressure curve
- Status Overview Pressure display
- Status Station
- Status Manual preselect
- 2. Tap the required option.
- Result After a while with no user input, the selected menu is automatically displayed. The time duration is set with the *Timeout for STANDBY* parameter in the menu "Configuration" "Display".

7.10.2 Customized station name

A customized station name can be entered. It is shown in the header line in menu StatusStation.

Precondition The Menu behaviour menu is displayed locally

1. Tap the *Station name* field.



The customized station name can only be set locally at SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0. If you access via KAESER CONNECT the name is only displayed.



2. Use the virtual keyboard to enter a station name and confirm with Accept.

7.11 SAM 4.0 terminal

The *SAM 4.0 terminal* menu provides an overview of basic SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 device data and several "Engineering Base" settings.

The parameters for the *X7 Ethernet 1 Gb* interface which serve to connect to the customer network can be configured at SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.

The SAM 4.0 terminal menu has the following sub-menus:

- "Serial data"
- "Measurement data"
- "X6 SIGMA NETWORK"
- "X7 Ethernet 1 Gb"
- > Check the displayed data and adjust the settings as required.

7.11.1 Serial data

	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi	
	Configuration SAM 4.0 terminal	Status
	Serial data Measurement data X6 SIGMA NETWORK X7 Ethernet 1 Gb	Messages
	Nameplate PN: 6309-1500-0200	Monitoring
	SN: 17-22-014-544	Energy & costs
	KAESER PN: 7.9696P1	Mntnce
	KAESER SN: 001412	
	MFGDT: 2017/03	Control
	MAC_X6: 80:6C:8B:C0:00:60	SAM 4.0 Logic
	MAC_X7: 80:6C:8B:C0:00:61	Time control
	Software	Initial Start-up
	Software version:1.12.5	Configuration
ω	Software date:2019-11-01_12-00-00	
07-C262		Contact 1
	·	

Fig. 53 Serial data menu

 Press the Configuration – SAM 4.0 terminal key. The SAM 4.0 terminal menu is displayed.



7.11 SAM 4.0 terminal

2. Tap the *Serial data* tab,

The following data is displayed in the *Serial data* menu:

Menu level	Indication	Meaning
Nameplate	PN:	Controller manufacturer's Material No.
	SN:	Controller manufacturer's Serial No.
	KAESER PN:	KAESER Material No.
	KAESER SN:	KAESER Serial No.
	MFGDT:	Manufacturing date
	MAC_X6:	MAC address interface X6 SIGMA NETWORK
	MAC_X7:	MAC address interface X7 Ethernet 1 Gb
"Software"	Software version	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 software version display
	Software date	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 software version date

- Tab. 54 Serial data menu
 - 3. Check the displayed data.

7.11.2 Measurement data

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 Configuration (see 7.4 "User Login" section)

- Press the Configuration SAM 4.0 terminal key. The SAM 4.0 terminal menu is displayed.
- 2. Tap the Measurement data tab,

The following data is displayed in the *Measurement data* menu:

Indication	Meaning	
Temperature 1 (CPU) 1)	Processor temperature	
Fan	Operating mode of the integrated fan Automatic or ON	
Fan on at temperature 1 (CPU)	Fan cut-in threshold	
Fan off at temperature 1 (CPU)	Fan cut-out threshold	
Temperature 2 (Board) 1)	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 main circuit board temperature	
Temperature 3 (Display) 1)	Touch screen display temperature	
Supply voltage	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 power supply voltage	
¹⁾ The values are displayed in the set "unit".		

Tab. 55 Measurement data menu

- 3. If necessary, set the operating mode of the integrated fan Automatic or ON.
- 4. Check the displayed data.

7.11.3 X6 SIGMA NETWORK

 Press the Configuration – SAM 4.0 terminal key. The SAM 4.0 terminal menu is displayed.



2. Tap the X6 SIGMA NETWORK tab,

The following data is displayed in the X6 SIGMA NETWORK menu:

Indication	Meaning
IP address	IP address of the X6 SIGMA NETWORK interface
Net mask	SIGMA NETWORK subnet mask
Gateway	SIGMA NETWORK gateway address

Tab. 56 X6 SIGMA NETWORK menu

3. Check the displayed data.

7.11.4 X7 Ethernet 1 Gb

The parameters for the *X7 Ethernet 1 Gb* interface which are necessary for connection to the customer network can be set at SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0. This setting is required for using KAESER CONNECT and communication with the KAESER IoT Client.

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 Configuration (see 7.4 "User Login" section)

The active operating mode is *Manual* (see 10.3.1 "Switch on manual operation" section) The network parameters are known. Request the required information from your IT department

1. Press the Configuration – SAM 4.0 terminal key.

The SAM 4.0 terminal menu is displayed.

2. Tap the X7 Ethernet 1 Gb tab.

The following parameters can be configured in the X7 Ethernet 1 Gb menu:

Parameters	Meaning
Interface	Activation status of the X7 Ethernet 1 Gb interface for the connection to the cus- tomer network
DHCP	DHCP option status. Checking this option box activates the automatic assignment of the IP address to an DHCP server in the customer network
IP address	IP address of X7 Ethernet 1 Gb interface. You are required to manually enter the IP address here if the DHCP option is inactive. The left side displays the current IP address. A new IP address can be entered in the input field on the right side (the IP address range 10.0.2.0 – 10.0.2.255 is excluded)
Net mask	Subnet mask of the customer network
Gateway	Gateway address of the customer network
Name server	DNS server address
Accept settings	Save the changed settings. The settings are automatically applied after voltage off/on of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0
Network test	A ping message is sent to the IP address entered. If successfully received, the network device sends a response. This allows for checking of network settings and transfer via the network
Current	The currently active setting, provided the control field is active



7.12 E-mail

Parameters	Meaning	
New	New setting values are applied once the Accept settings key is pressed or when	
	the supply voltage is switched off and then on again.	
	It is only possible to apply the settings in the <i>Manual</i> operating mode.	
	When applied, the SIGMA NETWORK connection is briefly interrupted	

- Tab. 57 X7 Ethernet 1 Gb menu
 - 3. Enter the required settings.
 - 4. Press the Accept settings key.
 - 5. Switch off the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 power supply (miniature circuit breaker in the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 control cabinet or the user's power supply isolating device).
 - 6. Wait for a few seconds.
 - 7. Switch on the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 power supply (miniature circuit breaker in the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 control cabinet or the user's power supply isolating device).
- Result SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is connected to the customer network. The KAESER CONNECT function can be used (see chapter 8.8 "KAESER CONNECT").

7.12 E-mail

The parameters of the e-mail function that has been integrated in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 can be set locally. The *E-mail* menu has the following sub-menus:

- "Send options"
- "General settings"
- "Alive message"
- "History"

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 *Configuration* (see chapter 7.4 "User Login") The e-mail parameters are known. Request the required information from the IT department

7.12.1 Send options

Use the Send options menu to set the parameters required for sending messages via e-mail.



7.12 E-mail

7

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic	101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Configuration E-mail		Status
	Send options General settings Transmission test signal	History	Messages
	Sending of messages: Active		Monitoring
	Sender's name: SAM 4.0-4]	Energy & costs
	Contact's phone number:]	Mntnce
	Language: en_US English	1	SAM 4.0 Logic
	Repeat hold-off time : 10 min		Time control
	Send-attempt interval: 30 s		Initial Start-up Configuration
25581	Send-attempt period : 72 h		Contact
0-20)	

Fig. 54 Send options menu

 Press the Configuration – E-mail key. Tap the *Send options* tab.

The Send options menu displays the following e-mail parameters:

Parameter	Meaning
Sending of messages	E-mail sending is activated if the <i>Active</i> checkbox is ticked off.
Sender's name	In this field you enter the name that appears as the sender of e-mails.
Contact's phone number	In this field, enter a telephone number under which the air station operator can be reached. This telephone number is sent with each e-mail.
Language	Language setting for sending e-mail.
Repeat hold-off time	The repeat lock time specifies the time interval during which a message cannot be resent if the same message has already been sent by e-mail. This prevents multiple sending operations of the same e-mail if a message trigger (e.g., a loose contact) occurs several times in a short period of time.
Send-attempt interval	In this field you enter the time in seconds for the system to wait after a failed e- mail sending operation before it attempts to resend the e-mail.
Send-attempt period	Use this setting to specify how long the system is to attempt to e-mail a mes- sage. In most cases (but not always), it is advisable to no longer send an old message since its cause has probably been remedied in the interim.

- Tab. 58 Menu *E-mail Send options*
 - 2. Enter the required settings.



2 E-mail

7.12.2 General settings

Use the *General settings* menu to set the communication parameters required for sending messages via e-mail.

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Configuration E-mail	Status
	Send options General settings Transmission test signal History	Messages
	Sender e-mail address : SAM_status@factory.com	Monitoring
	Recipient e-mail address: surveilance@factory.com	Energy & costs
	SMTP Host: 192.168.80.123	Mntnce
	SMTP Port: 25	Control
	SSL Active	SAM 4.0 Logic
	SMTP user name:	Time control
	SMTP Password:	
	Advanced Send test e-mail	Initial Start-up
		Configuration
	Data forwarding Active	
		Contact 1

Fig. 55 General settings menu

1. Tap the *General settings* tab.

Parameter	Meaning
Sender e-mail address	The e-mail address to be used as sender address by SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.
Recipient e-mail address	The e-mail address of the recipient.
SMTP Host	Domain name ¹⁾ or IP address of the SMTP e-mail server receiving and forwarding the messages.
SMTP Port	The port address of the SMTP e-mail server receiving and forwarding the messages.
SSL	E-mail sending is encrypted if the checkbox is ticked off.
SMTP user name	The log-in user name for logging on to the SMTP e-mail server.
SMTP Password	The log-in password for logging on to the SMTP e-mail server.
Advanced	Opens a menu where you can set the type of e-mail authentication.
Send test e-mail	Send a test e-mail to verify the settings.
SMTP Port SSL SMTP user name SMTP Password Advanced Send test e-mail	The port address of the SMTP e-mail server receiving and forwarding the messages. E-mail sending is encrypted if the checkbox is ticked off. The log-in user name for logging on to the SMTP e-mail server. The log-in password for logging on to the SMTP e-mail server. Opens a menu where you can set the type of e-mail authentication. Send a test e-mail to verify the settings.

¹⁾ requires setting the DNS server with the parameter *Name server* in menu *Configuration – SAM 4.0 terminal*, see chapter 7.11.4 "X7 Ethernet 1 Gb"



7.12 E-mail

Parameter	Meaning
Data forwarding	Forwarding of compressed air generator data from KAESER machines with SIGMA CONTROL 2 controller is activated if the checkbox is ticked off.

¹⁾ requires setting the DNS server with the parameter *Name server* in menu *Configuration – SAM 4.0 terminal*, see chapter 7.11.4 "X7 Ethernet 1 Gb"

Tab. 59 Menu E-mail – General settings

2. Enter the required settings.

7.12.3 Test e-mail

You can send a local test e-mail to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 to verify the settings.

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 Configuration (see chapter 7.4 "User Login")

- Press the Send test e-mail key.
- Result The e-mail settings are correct when the recipient receives the test e-mail.

7.12.4 Alive message

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 features an option for sending a "sign of life" e-mail message once a day. The time can be defined. This message confirms that SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is in operation and that the e-mail function is working.

	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8 Automatic 101 ps	M ACCESS MODE
	Configuration E-mail	Status
	Send options General settings Transmission test signal History	Messages
	Transmission test signal: 🛛 Active	Monitoring
	Time: 07:30:00 AM	Energy & costs
	Technician on site	
	Technician leaving	SAM 4.0 Logic
		Time control
		Initial Start-up
		Configuration
07-C2682		Contact 1

Fig. 56 Alive message menu



7.12 E-mail

1. Tap the *Alive message* tab.

Parameter	Meaning
Alive message	Sign-of-life e-mail sending is activated if the Active checkbox is ticked off.
Time of day	Time of day for the daily sign-of-life message to be sent.
Technician on site	Key with which a message can be sent when a technician on site is working on the machine.
Technician leaving	Key with which a message can be sent when a technician on site has finished working on the machine.

- Tab. 60 Menu *E-mail Alive message*
 - 2. Enter the required settings.

7.12.5 History

E-mail sending is logged in submenu *History*. If e-mail sending does not work properly, the *History* menu may prove helpful for troubleshooting.

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8	Automatic	101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Configuration E-mail			Status
	Send options General settings	Transmission test signal	History	Messages
	Event Status	Details		Monitoring
	05/12/2019 SAM 4.0 energy re √ SAM 4.0 energy re	port for 05/11/2019		Energy & costs
	05/11/2019 SAM 4.0 energy re	port for 05/10/2019		Mntnce
	05/10/2019 SAM 4.0 energy re 07:30:00 AM	port for 05/09/2019		Control
	05/09/2019	port for 05/08/2019		Time control
	05/08/2019	port for 05/07/2019		Initial Start-up
				Configuration
60000-10				Contact 1

- Fig. 57 Menu E-mail History
 - ► Tap the *History* tab.

Parameter	Meaning
Event	Date and time of event
Status	Status of e-mail sending
Details	Detailed information about the type of sent e-mails

Tab. 61 Menu *E-mail – History*


Result A list of sent e-mails is displayed.

7.13 SIGMA NETWORK I/O

Except for the IP address of the I/O block, "Engineering Base" is used for all communication settings in SIGMA NETWORK. You can check the settings in the SIGMA NETWORK I/O menu.

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 uses SIGMA NETWORK to communicate with machines with SIGMA CONTROL 2 and with the I/O blocks of the SIGMA NETWORK bus converters (SBU). An I/O block comprises of a bus controller (type: BC0087) and the available I/O modules (module positions: X0-X9). Any inputs and outputs that are present several times at an I/O module are called I/O channels. See Chapter 2.4 "Control cabinet components" for the technical data of potential I/O modules.

The individual I/O blocks are identified by IDs. One I/O block is provided in the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 control cabinet. Its factory-set ID is 65. 14 additional I/O blocks (SBU) are maximally possible.

Each I/O block uses SIGMA NETWORK to communicate with SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 and is given a unique IP address for this purpose. This IP address is 169.254.100.XX, with XX being identical with the I/O block ID.





Fig. 58 I/O block overview (example with two I/O blocks)

Element	Meaning
I/O block 65	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 control cabinet with factory-set I/O block
X0–X10	I/O modules (module positions: X0-X10) Dashed frame: I/O block or module is not assigned
BC0087-c01	Bus controller with ID 65, 66,



Initial Start-up

7.13 SIGMA NETWORK I/O

Element	Meaning
Module state	Communication status of the I/O modules: <i>OK</i> : Bus communication OK <i>No connection</i> : Communication fault
Bus controller state	Bus controller communication status: <i>OK</i> : Bus communication OK <i>No connection</i> : Communication fault

Tab. 62 Meaning of the menu elements I/O block overview

The *I/O block overview* menu displays the I/O blocks or modules as symbols. Depending on the status, the I/O blocks or modules are identified as follows:

- Continuous frame: I/O block or module is parametrized.
- Interrupted frame: I/O block or module is not parametrized.
- Green: I/O block or module is active.
- Yellow: I/O block or module is available although it has not been (or has been differently) parametrized.
- Red: I/O block or module is not active.

For setting the I/O blocks, see Chapter 7.13.2 "I/O block". For setting the I/O modules, see Chapter 7.13.3 "I/O module".

For setting the I/O signals, see Chapter 7.13.4 "I/O signals".

7.13.1 Starting the SBU



During the registration process, you can only register one SBU at SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 at any time. If you want to register multiple SBU, you have to do this in sequence. Any SBU not yet registered must remain deactivated.

Follow the following sequence to ensure the proper commissioning of the SBU.

Precondition All installation activities and wiring tasks have been properly and completely performed according to chapter 6 "Installation".

The SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is switched on.

SBU is switched off at the power supply disconnecting device

- Switch on the power supply switch for **one** new SBU.
 The L/A IF1 LED at the Bus Controller of the SBU illuminates green. A message box is displayed at the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0:
- 2. Transfer IP address to block in the *I/O block XX Bus controller BC0087* menu; see Chapter 7.13.2 "I/O block"
- 3. If you want to register other SBU at the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0, you must follow the procedure described above from item 1. for every SBU.

7.13.2 I/O block

You can display the "Engineering Base" configuration of the I/O block in the I/O block menu.



7.13 SIGMA NETWORK I/O

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
	Initial Start-up I/O block 65 Bus Controller BC0087	Status
	Identification Block number: 65	Messages
	Designation : SAM 4.0Station 1	Monitoring
	Communication IP address : 169.254.100.65	Energy & costs
	Communication status : OK	Maint.
		Control
		Timer control
		Initial Start-up
		Configuration
2208	Back	Contact
07-02		

Fig. 59 //O block menu

 Press the Initial Start-up – SIGMA NETWORK key. The *I/O block* menu is displayed

Element	Meaning
Block number	The block number (ID) is displayed here.
Designation	The number of the I/O block is displayed here.
IP address	This field displays the IP address currently assigned to the I/O block.
Communication status	This field displays the current communication status: ■ <i>OK</i> - Bus communication is OK
	No connection - Communication fault

- Tab. 63Meaning of the menu elements I/O block
 - Touch the required I/O block (BC0087).
 The I/O block XX Bus controller BC0087 is displayed (XX: ID of the I/O bock).
 - 3. Check the set parameters.

7.13.3 I/O module

You can display the "Engineering Base" configuration of the individual I/O modules in the *I/O block XX – Module configuration* menu.



7.13 SIGMA NETWORK I/O

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
	Initial Start-up I/O block 65 Module X0 AI4632-1	Status
	Identification Module position : X0	Messages
	Expected module type : Al4632-1 Detected module type : Al4632-1	Monitoring
		Energy & costs
		Maint.
		SAM 4.0 Logic
		Timer control
		Initial Start-up
	Signal configuration	Configuration
ě	Back	Contact
5		

Fig. 60 Module configuration menu

 Press the Initial Start-up – SIGMA NETWORK key. The *I/O block overview* menu is displayed

Element	Meaning
Module position	Displays the currently selected module position.
Expected module type	The expected module type is displayed. This is a useful feature for servicing, for example, when the module fails and the module type can no longer be automatically read and displayed as <i>Detected module type</i> .
Detected module type	Displays the automatically detected module type. If nothing or is displayed, the system has not detected the module which is then shown in yellow or red in the I/O block overview.

Tab. 64 Meaning of the *Module configuration* menu elements

- 2. Touch the required I/O module (module positions: X0-X10).
- The I/O block XX module XY ZZZZ is displayed (XY: module position, ZZZZ: module type).
- 3. Check the displayed settings.

7.13.4 I/O signals

If supported by the selected module type, you can display the "Engineering Base" configuration of the individual I/O signals of the currently selected I/O module.



7.13 SIGMA NETWORK I/O

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
	Initial Start-up I/O block 65 Module X1 DI6371 Signals	Status
	X1.1 X1.2 X1.3 X1.4 X1.5 X1.6	Messages
	Signal name : DI 1	Monitoring
	Connected : Yes Signal logic : Positive	Energy & costs
	Current value : 1	Maint.
		Control
		SAM 4.0 Logic
		Timer control
		Initial Start-up
		Configuration
22.29	Back	Contact
-20		

Fig. 61 Example: Signal configuration, analog input

Press the Initial Start-up – SIGMA NETWORK key.

The I/O block overview menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
I/O signal	Selecting the I/O signal sub-menu.
Signal name	This field displays the name of the signal. This name is used by SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 for the display of the processed measured values and for <i>SAM 4.0 Logic</i> .
Connected	Yes: SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 uses this I/O signal.
	No: This I/O signal is deactivated and is not used.
Signal logic	Positive: The signals are processed 1:1.
	Negative: The signals are processed inverted.

- Tab. 65 Meaning of the menu elements I/O signals
 - 2. Touch the required I/O module (module positions: X0-X9).

The *I/O block XX – module XY ZZZZ* is displayed (XY: module position, ZZZZ: module type).

3. Press the Signal configuration key.

The *I/O block XX – module XY ZZZZ -* channels is displayed (XY: module position, ZZZZ: module type). If the currently selected I/O module has multiple I/O signals, they are shown in submenus such as X3.1-X3.4.

- 4. Select the required I/O signal.
- 5. Check the displayed settings.



Initial Start-up

4 PROFIBUS

7.14 PROFIBUS

The communication at PROFIBUS is set with "Engineering Base". The *PROFIBUS* menu is used to check the settings.

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 uses the PROFIBUS to communicate with the machines (SIGMA CONTROL or SIGMA CONTROL 2) and Profibus converters (PBU). For this, you must have installed the PROFIBUS master option in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 or SBU.

The SIGMA NETWORK / PROFIBUS master (Option PROFIBUS master) protocol converter uses SIGMA NETWORK to communicate with SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 but, as master, it uses PROFIBUS for the communication with SIGMA CONTROL, SIGMA CONTROL 2 and the PBUs. In the SIGMA NETWORK, it has the ID 98 (IP address: 169.254.100.98). In the PROFIBUS network, it has the PROFIBUS address 2 as master. The PROFIBUS converters (PBUs) are PROFIBUS I/Os from SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 with the following PROFIBUS slave addresses:

- PBU 8/8: Slave addresses 20-27
- PBU 32: Slave addresses 28/32
- PBU 4+4: Slave addresses 36/44
- PBU PT100/PT1000: Slave addresses 52/60



Fig. 62 PROFIBUS I/O overview menu

Element	Meaning
SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter	Protocol converter SIGMA NETWORK / PROFIBUS master, abbreviated to Converter Green symbol: Bus communication okay Red symbol: Communication fault
SNW	Communication status at SIGMA NETWORK of the converter
PROFIBUS	Communication status of the PROFIBUS I/O slaves



7.14 PROFIBUS

Element	Meaning
Converter : 98	SIGMA NETWORK address
Converter : 2	PROFIBUS Slave address
PROFIBUS Slaves state	 Green symbol: Bus communication okay Red symbol: Communication fault Dashed frame: Converter not configured

Tab. 66 Meaning of the PROFIBUS I/O overview menu elements

You can display the PROFIBUS master settings as shown in Chapter 7.14.1 "SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter".

You can display the PBU (slaves) settings as shown in Chapter 7.14.2 "PROFIBUS Slave".

7.14.1 SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter

You can display the "Engineering Base" settings for the PROFIBUS master.

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Initial Start-up SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter	Status
	Identification Active : Yes	Messages
	SNW PROFIBUS SIGMA NETWORK : 98 address	Monitoring
	Designation :	Energy & costs
	Serial data	Mntnce
	Material number : 7.9661.1	Control
		SAM 4.0 Logic
	SIGMA NETWORK communication IP address : 169.254.100.98 Communication status : OK	Time control
	PROFIBUS communication	Initial Start-up
	PROFIBUS Slave address : 2 Communication status : OK	Configuration
07-62383	Back	Contact

Fig. 63 SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter menu

 Press the Initial Start-up – PROFIBUS key. The SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
Active	Indicates whether the converter is or is not activated.
SIGMA NETWORK address	SIGMA NETWORK address



Initial Start-up

7.14 PROFIBUS

Element	Meaning
Designation	This field displays a name for the master (for example, "SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0").
Part number	If possible, the material number is retrieved from the master and displayed here.
IP address	This field displays the SIGMA NETWORK IP address currently assigned to SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter.
Communication status	 This field displays the current SIGMA NETWORK communication status: <i>OK</i>: Bus communication okay <i>No connection</i>: Communication fault
PROFIBUS Slave address	This field displays the PROFIBUS IP address assigned to the master.
Communication status	 This field displays the current PROFIBUS I/O communication status: OK: Bus communication okay No connection to slave XX: Communication to slave XX faulty

Tab. 67 Meaning of the menu elements SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter

- 2. Touch SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter.
 - The SNW/PROFIBUS Master converter menu is displayed.
- 3. Check the displayed settings.

7.14.2 PROFIBUS Slave

You can display the "Engineering Base" settings of the individual I/O signals of the currently selected PROFIBUS slaves. The type and number of the possible parameters depend on the used slave type.

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
	Initial Start-up PROFIBUS Slave 20	Status
	Identification PBU Active: Yes	Messages
	PROFIBUS Slave address : 20	Monitoring
	PROFIBUS communication	Energy & costs
	Communication status : OK	Maint.
		Control
		SAM 4.0 Logic
		Timer control
		Initial Start-up
	Signal configuration	Configuration
07-02384	Back	Contact





 Press the Initial Start-up – PROFIBUS key. The *PROFIBUS Slave* menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
Active	Indicates whether the slave is or is not activated.
PROFIBUS Slave address	PROFIBUS Slave address
Communication status	 This field displays the current PROFIBUS communication status: <i>OK</i>: Bus communication okay <i>No connection</i>: Communication fault
Signal configuration	Display the individual signals of selected I/O modules here

- Tab. 68 Meaning of the menu elements PROFIBUS Slave
 - Touch the required PROFIBUS Slave. The menu *PROFIBUS SlaveXY* (XY: slave address) is displayed.
 - 3. Tap Signal configuration.

The Signals menu is displayed.

KAESER	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Initial Start-up PROFIBUS Slave 20 PBU 8/8 Signals	Status
	20.0 20.1 20.2 20.3 20.4 20.5 20.6 20.7	Messages
	Signal name :	Monitoring
	Connected : Yes Signal logic : Positive Signal type : Input (I)	Energy & costs
	Current value : #####	Control
		SAM 4.0 Logic
		Time control
		Initial Start-up
		Configuration
C2449	Back	Contact 1
07-		

- Fig. 65 Example PROFIBUS Slave 20
 - 4. Touch the required I/O signal.

The menu for the selected I/O signal is displayed.

Element	Meaning
I/O signals	Using the signal number to select an I/O signal sub-menu.
Signal name	This field displays the name of the signal.
Connected	 Yes: SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 uses this I/O signal. No: This I/O signal is deactivated and is not used.



7.15 SIGMA NETWORK

7

Element	Meaning
Signal logic	 <i>Positive</i>: The signals are processed 1:1. <i>Negative</i>: The signals are processed inverted.
Signal type	 Input (I) Output (O)
Current value	Current measured value or state at this measured value.

Tab. 69 Meaning of the I/O signals menu elements

5. Check the displayed settings.

7.15 SIGMA NETWORK

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 communicates via the SIGMA NETWORK with compressed air generators and other devices with compatible controllers.

Communication within the SIGMA NETWORK is configured using "Engineering Base" – with the exception of the IP address of the I/O block. The *SIGMA NETWORK* menu is used to check the settings.

The SIGMA NETWORK menu has the following sub-menus:

- Compressors
- Dryer
- Control valves

	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Initial Start-up SIGMA NETWORK SC	Status
	Compressors Dryer Control valves	Messages
	103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110	Monitoring
	C1 C2 C3 C4 C5 C6 C7 C8 SC2 I SC2<	Energy & costs
	111 112 113 114 115 116 117 118	Mntnce
	C9 I C10 I C11 I C12 I C13 I C14 I C15 I C16 I SC2 I <td< th=""><th>Control</th></td<>	Control
	Status:No connection to slave 107	SAM 4.0 Logic
		Time control
		Initial Start-up
		Configuration
07-62620		Contact i



1. Press the Initial Start-up - SIGMA NETWORK key.



2. Touch the requested tab, e.g. *Compressors*. The *Compressors* menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
Elements C1–C16	Compressed air generator, e.g. with KAESER controller SIGMA CONTROL 2
Elements D1–D16	Dryer, e.g. with KAESER controller SIGMA CONTROL SMART
Elements DHS1– DHS16	Air-main charging system with KAESER controller
Individual element	 Green symbol: Bus communication okay Red symbol: There is a communications fault Dotted frame: No device expected at this position
Status	<i>OK</i> : Bus communication okay <i>No connection</i> : Communication fault

Tab. 70 Meaning of the SIGMA NETWORK menu elements - overview

KAESER	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Initial Start-up SIGMA NETWORK SC	Status
	Identification Address:106	Messages
	Name: C4 - C4 CSDX 165 SFC	Monitoring
	Communication	Energy & costs
	IP address: 169.254.100.106 Communication status : OK	Mntnce
		Control
		SAM 4.0 Logic
		Time control
		Initial Start-up
		Configuration
	Back	Contact 1

Fig. 67 SIGMA NETWORK menu

3. Touch the required machine with the KAESER SIGMA CONTROL 2 controller. The *SIGMA NETWORK* menu for the corresponding machine is displayed.

Element	Meaning
Address	Controller address
Name	Machine designation
IP address	The IP address currently assigned to the controller is displayed here



7.15 SIGMA NETWORK

Element	Meaning
Communication status	<i>OK</i> : Bus communication okay
	No connection: Communication fault

Tab. 71 Meaning of the SIGMA NETWORK menu elements - controller

4. Check the displayed settings.

7.15.1 Start the dryer or air-main charging system (DHS)

Î

During the login process, only one dryer or air-main charging system can be logged onto SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 at the same time. If multiple dryers or air-main charging systems need to be logged in, this must be done sequentially. Dryers or air-main charging systems that have not yet been logged in must remain switched off until they are logged in.

To ensure smooth commissioning of dryers or air-main charging systems, a certain sequence must be followed.

Below you will find an example that describes commissioning based on a dryer. An air-main charging system (DHS) is commissioned in the same way via submenu *Control valves*.

Precondition All installation activities and wiring tasks have been properly and completely performed according to chapter 6 "Installation"

The SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is switched on.

The new dryers or air-main charging systems to be logged on are switched off at the power supply disconnecting device.

1. Switch on the power supply disconnecting device for **one** new dryer.

The communications status for the dryer is displayed in the menu: OK is illuminated in orange

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Initial Start-up SIGMA NETWORK SC	Status
	Identification Address:11	Messages
	Name: D1 - TF 174	Monitoring
	Software version:	Energy & costs
	Communication	Mntnce
	Communication status : OK	Control
	Transfer IP address to block : 169.254.100.11	SAM 4.0 Logic
		Time control
		Initial Start-up
		Configuration
07-62977	Back	Contact





- Press the Transfer IP address to dryer key.
 The IP address is transferred to the dryer controller.
 This process takes a few seconds.
 - The communications status for the dryer is displayed in the menu: OK is illuminated in green
- 3. If additional dryers are to be logged on to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0, perform the same procedure as described above, starting with step 1.

The Control menu has the following sub-menus:

- Parameter
 - "Constant pressure control"
 - "Pressure monitoring"
 - "Volume flow rate control" *)
 - "Adapt. pressure reg.-low pressure" *)
 - "Advanced" *)
- "Actual pressure value"

*) Availability dependent on Engineering Base configuration

7.16.1 Constant pressure control

Use the *Constant pressure control* menu to set the "Required pressure" [pREQ] and display other basic pressure parameters of the station.

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 *Configuration* (see 7.4 "User Login" section) The required pressure for the air network to be controlled is known.



7

	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8	Automatic	101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Control Parameter			Status
	Constant pressure control	ressure monitoring	Volume flow rate control	Messages
	Pressure range limit		109 psi	Monitoring
	Maximum required pressure		102 psi	Energy & costs
	Minimum required pressure		97.2 psi	Mntnce
	SFC target pressure offset		7.25 psi	Control
	SFC current pressure time constant		1.45 psi	SAM 4.0 Logic
	Heat is requested	1	10	Time control
				Initial Start-up
				Configuration
07-C2576				Contact İ



1. Press the Control – Parameter key

The menu Control – Parameter is displayed.

Parameters	Meaning
Pressure range limit [pR]	You define the pressure margin by setting a pressure value above the <i>required pressure</i>
	For example, if you want a required pressure of 101.5 psi and a pressure mar- gin of 7.5 psi, you must specify 109 psi as value for the <i>pressure margin</i> .
Maximum required pressure	<i>Maximum required pressure</i> is the maximal values that you can set for the re- quired pressure.
Required pressure [pREQ]	The <i>required pressure</i> is the pressure required by the consumers in the compressed air network.
	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 usually maintains the <i>required pressure</i> with a max- imum deviation of 1.5 psi. For energetic reasons, the <i>required pressure</i> is to be set as low as possible, i.e., not higher as required for the consumers within the compressed air network. A pressure of 14.5 psi higher than required causes ap- proximately 6 % more energy consumption.
Minimum required pressure	<i>Minimum required pressure</i> is the minimal values that you can set for the re- quired pressure.
SFC target pressure offset	Set here and offset value for the target pressure for frequency-controlled ma- chines. The SFC target pressure offset indicates by how much the target value of the pressure for the pressure controller in the compressor is above the re- quired pressure.



Parameters	Meaning
SFC current pressure time constant	Here you can set a time constant for frequency-controlled machines (SFC) for smoothing the SFC actual pressure value in seconds.
Heat is requested	Here you can activate/deactivate this function for machines with heat recovery.

- Tab. 72 Parameters in the Constant pressure control menu
 - 2. Tap the input field in line *Required pressure*.
 - An input mask opens.
 - 3. Set Required pressure.
 - 4. Set SFC target pressure offset.
 - 5. Check other displayed data.

7.16.2 Pressure monitoring

The monitoring parameters of the station can be displayed in the *Pressure monitoring* menu.

Parameters	Meaning
Activation of "Pressure too high" alarm	Displays the status of the signal function.
Threshold value "Pressure too high"	Defined threshold value for the monitoring function.
Trigger delay "Pressure too high"	Time by which the threshold value must be continually exceeded before a signal is triggered.
Activation of "Pressure too low" alarm	Displays the status of the signal function.
Threshold value "Pressure too low"	Defined threshold value for the monitoring function.
Trigger delay "Pressure too low"	Time by which the threshold value must be continually exceeded before a signal is triggered.
Activation of "Pressure too low" alarm (dp)	Displays the status of the signal function.
Threshold value "Pressure too low" (dp)	Defined threshold value for the monitoring function.
Trigger delay "Pressure too low" (dp)	Time by which the threshold value must be continually exceeded before a signal is triggered.

Tab. 73 Parameters in the *Pressure monitoring* menu

7.16.3 Volume flow rate control

Set the parameters for this operating mode in the Volume flow rate control menu.

Precondition The *Volume flow rate control* operating mode is only visible in the *Control* menu if it has previously been configured in Engineering Base for its application Login with Access Level 2 *Configuration* (see chapter 7.4 "User Login")

The required parameters for the compressed air network to be controlled are known.



7

KAESER	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 2 4	Automatic	1198 CFM	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Control Parameter			Status
	Constant pressure control	Pressure monitoring Volume flow	v rate control	Messages
	Target volume flow rate:	530	CFM	Monitoring
	Target volume flow rate according to: intake conditions	618	3 CFM	Energy & costs
	Differential volume:	70.00] cu.ft	Mntnce
	Minimum flow rate:	Average flow rate	•	Control
	Target volume flow rate according to standard conditions	DIN 1343		SAM 4.0 Logic
	Reference pressure Reference temperature	14.5 32	psi °F	Time control
	Reference humidity	C) %	Initial Start-up
	22 psi Standa	ard 14.50	psi	
	104 °F Standa	ard 68.0]°F	Configuration
02798	6 40 % Stand	ard 0	%	Contact 1

Fig. 70 Menu: Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control

- 1. Press the Control Parameter key.
- 2. Touch the Volume flow rate control tab.

The Control – Parameter – Volume flow rate control menu is displayed.

Parameters	Meaning
Target volume flow rate	Set-point value to which the flow rate is controlled.
Target volume flow rate according to inlet condition	Flow rate that must be reached under the given intake conditions (pressure, temperature, humidity) in order to ensure the <i>Target volume flow rate</i> .
Differential volume	The value for the difference volume determines how far the delivered vol- ume may deviate from the target volume before compressed air generators are switched on or off.
Minimum flow rate	With the setting <i>Average flow rate</i> , the set-point value is only then corrected in the event of a deviation if the integral of the deviated delivery volume ex- ceeds the set difference volume. With the setting <i>Minimum flow rate</i> , the value is only corrected if the target flow rate is fallen short of.
Target volume flow rate according to standard condition	Selection of the requested standard (ISO 1217, DIN 1343, ASME & CAGI) or option "1:1". If option "1:1: is selected, the set target flow rate is supplied under any in- take conditions.
Reference pressure Reference temperature Reference humidity	These values correspond to the reference points of the corresponding standard and change depending on which of the different standards is selected.



Parameters	Meaning
	The sensor provides valid values.
6	The sensor does not provide valid values.
Current value	Current measured value of the corresponding sensor.
Standard	Release value for corresponding sensor in the event that the sensor signal does not provide valid values.

- Tab. 74 Meaning of the menu elements in the Volume flow rate control menu
 - 3. Enter the required settings.

7.16.4 Adapt. pressure reg.-low pressure

Set the parameters for the operating mode "Pressure control without receiver volume" in the *Adapt. pressure reg.-low pressure* menu.

Precondition The *Adapt. pressure reg.-low pressure* operating mode is only visible in the *Control* menu if it has previously been configured in Engineering Base for its application Login with Access Level 2 *Configuration* (see 7.4 "User Login" section)

The required parameters for the compressed air network to be controlled are known

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 2 4	Automatikbetrieb	0.48 bar	Bedienen ZUGRIFFSMODUS
	Regelung Parameter			Status
	Adaptive Druckregelung - Niederdruck	Erweitert Drucküberwa	achung	Meldungen
	int_p3 - oberer Schaltpuffer:	100	bar * s	Monitoring
	Bezugsdruck oberer Druckspielraum:	0.51	bar	Energie & Kosten
	p4 - oberer Druckspielraum:	0.02	bar	Wartung
	p1 - Solldruck:	0.48	bar	Regelung
	p6 - unterer Druckspielraum:	0.02	bar	SAM 4.0 Logic
	Bezugsdruck unterer Druckspielraum:	0.46	bar	Zeitsteuerung
	int_p5 - unterer Schaltpuffer:	-0.50	bar * s	Inbetriebnahme
	Regeldynamik:	85.00	%	Konfiguration
07-C3598				Kontakt 1

Fig. 71 Menu Control – Adapt. pressure reg.-low pressure

1. Press the Control - Parameter key.



2. Tap the Adapt. pressure reg.-low pressure tab.

The Control - Parameter - Adapt. pressure reg.-low pressure menu is displayed.

Parameters	Meaning
p1 - set-point pressure	Set-point value to which the pressure value is controlled.
p4 - upper pressure range	Pressure differential between target pressure p1 and the upper reference pressure p3 for the integral calculation.
Reference pressure upper pressure range	The upper reference value p3 represents the value for activating the in- tegral calculation of int_p3 and is the result from the sum of p1 + P4.
int_p3 - upper switching buffer	Time integral over pressure differential.
p6 - lower pressure range	Pressure differential between target pressure p1 and the lower reference pressure p5 for the integral calculation.
Reference pressure lower pressure range	The lower reference value p5 represents the value for activating the inte- gral calculation of int_p5 and is the result from the difference between p1 - P4.
int_p5 - lower switching buffer	Time integral over pressure differential.
Control dynamics	Setting the reaction speed of the control.

- Tab. 75 Parameters in the Adapt. pressure reg.-low pressure menu
 - 3. Enter the required settings.

7.16.5 Advanced

Further parameters for the *Adapt. pressure reg.-low pressure* operating mode can be set in the *Advanced* menu.

Precondition The *Advanced* operating mode is only visible in the *Control* menu if it has previously been configured in Engineering Base for its application Login with password access Level 2 *Configuration* (see chapter 7.4 "User Login")

The required parameters for the compressed air network to be controlled are known





Fig. 72 Menu: Control - Parameter - Advanced

- 1. Press the Control Parameter key.
- Tap the Advanced tab.
 The menu *Control Parameter Advanced* is displayed.

Parameter	Meaning
p9 - Reference pressure for immediate shutdown action	p9 is the upper reference value which, when reached, causes a compressed air generator to shut down immediately
τ_9 - Time constant for p9	The time constant for p9 defines the minimum interval (in seconds) between two possible compressed air generator shutdown actions, provided that the following applies: p2 <= p9
p7 - Upper threshold for shutdown action	p7 is the upper, process-dependent threshold value for immediate shutdown of a compressed air generator. If p2 >= p7, SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 shuts the compressed air generator down. After the first immediate shutdown, a time difference of τ_7 must follow between each subsequent shutdown
τ_7 - Time constant for p7	The time constant for p7 defines the minimum interval (in seconds) between two possible compressed air generator shutdown actions, provided that the following applies: p2 >= p7
p8 - Lower threshold for activation of addi. air generators	p8 is the lower, process-dependent threshold value for immediate activation of a compressed air generator: If p2 <= p8, SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 shuts the compressed air generator down. After the first immediate activation, a time difference of τ_8 must follow between each subsequent activation
τ_8 - Time constant for p8	The time constant for p8 defines the minimum interval (in seconds) between two possible compressed air generator activations, provided that the following applies: p2 <= p8



Parameter	Meaning
Δp - Min. differ.	Δp is the minimum distance between the setpoint p1 and the cut-in/cut-out
between threshold	threshold values (process and station-dependent): If the distance between p1
values + target	and one of the switching threshold values is specified so that one of the differ-
pressure	ences $ p1 - p7 $, $ p1 - p8 $ or $ p1 - p9 < \Delta p$, the set value is corrected. This
	serves to ensure that the minimum distance to p1 is maintained

- Tab. 76 Meaning of the menu elements in the Advanced menu
 - 3. Enter the required settings.

7.16.6 Actual press. value

Set the parameters for the air main charging systems in the Actual press. value menu.

Precondition Login with password access Level 2 *Configuration* (see chapter 7.4 "User Login") The air main charging systems used in the compressed air network are known

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8	Automatic	101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Control Actual press. value			Status
	Actual pressure value			Messages
				Monitoring
	Pressure actual value 1 source	DHS1 - DHS 15G/ 1124:202	psi	Energy & costs
	Pressure actual value 1 weighting	33.33	×	
	Pressure actual value 2 source	DHS2 - DHS 15G/ 1124: 101	psi	Mintrice
	Pressure actual value 2 weighting	33.33	✓	Control
	Pressure actual value 3 source	DHS3 - DHS 15G/ 1124:	psi	
	Pressure actual value 3 weighting	33.33	✓	SAM 4.0 Logic
	Art store velue oviteb en diff.	7.05		Time control
	Act. press. value, switch-on diff.	1.25	psi	Initial Start-up
	Act. press. value, switch-off diff.	14.5	psi	
				Configuration
~				
7-C357				Contact 1
0				

- Fig. 73 Menu Control Actual press. value
 - Press the Control Actual press. value key The menu *Control – Actual press. value* is displayed.

Parameter	Meaning
Pressure actual value 1 source	Designation of the measuring point
Pressure actual value 2 source	
Pressure actual value 3 source	



Parameter	Meaning
Pressure actual value 1 weighting	Weighting by which the corresponding measured value of the ac- tual pressure value source is taken for the network pressure cal-
Pressure actual value 2 weighting	culation
Pressure actual value 3 weighting	
Actual pressure value switch- on diff.	If the deactivated actual pressure value then exceeds this value, the pressure transducer is reactivated
Actual pressure value switch- off diff.	If the pressure differential between the two lowest actual pressure values is greater than/equal to this value, the lower of the two pressure transducers is deactivated

Tab. 77 Parameters in the Actual press. value menu

7.17 Timer control

Individual tasks are defined in the *Timer control* menu. Using the timer control, you can set timers for various compressed air station parameters (such as required pressure and air delivery ON/ OFF).

Timers can be set for up to 99 tasks.

The time control is configured locally at SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.



For a sample task, see the 7.17.7"Example" section.

Precondition

on Login with Access Level 2 *Configuration* (see chapter 7.4 "User Login")



Fig. 74 *Timer control* menu



- 7.17 Timer control
- Press the Timer control key.
 The *Timer control* menu is displayed.

7.17.1 New function

7

A new task can be configured in the *Task* menu.

Precondition The *Timer control* menu is displayed

- 1. Touch the Tasks tab.
- 2. Press the New function key.

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0	4 Automatic	101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Time control Task			Status
	Overview Parame	ter Signal configuration		Messages
				Monitoring
	Task:	Timer 1	Active 🖸	Energy & costs
	Start:	11/12/2019 07:00:00 AM	Recurring task 🗸	Mntnce
	End:	11/12/2019 04:00:00 PM		
	Required pressure:		psi X	Control
	Max. permitted electrical power consumption		kW X	SAM 4.0 Logic
	Heat is requested:	No	×	Time control
				Initial Start-up
		Clear	Save Cancel	Configuration
				Contact 1

Fig. 75 Menu: Timer control – Task – Parameter

3. Touch the Parameter tab.

The Timer control - Task - Parameter menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
Task	User-defined task name.
	The Active option is used to execute this task.
	The option <i>Inactive</i> is used to not execute the task.
Start	Input fields for start date and time of the task.
End	Input fields for end date and time of the task.
Recurring task	Opens the <i>Recurring task</i> menu, in which the recurring tasks can be configured (see chapter 7.17.2).
Required pressure	Set and activate (optional) the set-point value for the required pressure of the task.



Initial Start-up

7.17 Timer control

Element	Meaning
Max. permitted electrical power consumption	Set and activate (optional) set-point value for maximum allowable power consumption for the task.
Heat is requested	Set and activate (optional) if heat is required for the task.
Control field "√"	Parameter is defined as a set-point value by the timer control.
Control field "X"	Parameter is not defined as a set-point value by the timer control.
Save	Save all settings for the task and close the menu

Tab. 78 Meaning of the Timer control - Task - Parameter menu elements

- 4. Enter the desired name for this task in the Task field.
- 5. Enter the date and time for start and end of this task in the Startand End fields.
- Touch the control field on the right to activate the desired parameter. A check mark "✓" is displayed in the activated control field.
- 7. Enter the set-point value(s) for the activated parameter(s) or touch the desired function.



Fig. 76 Menu: Timer control – Task – Signal configuration

8. Touch the Signal configuration tab.

The *Timer control – Task – Signal configuration* menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
Machine preselection	Set the machines that are to be used for the task and activate the function (optional).
Compressed air generation	Set the status of compressed air generation during the task and activate the function (optional).



Initial Start-up

7.17 Timer control

7

Element	Meaning
Control valves	Set the regulating valves (DHS) to be used for the task and activate the function (optional).
Channel	Set the status of channels during the task and activate the function (option- al).
Control	Set the pressure transducer to be considered for pressure control.
Control field "	Parameter is defined as a set-point value by the timer control.
Control field "X"	Parameter is not defined as a set-point value by the timer control.
Key colour: Green	The corresponding function has been activated.
Save	Save all settings for the task and close the menu.

Tab. 79 Meaning of the Timer control - Task - Signal configuration menu elements

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
	Timer control Task	Status
	Overview Parameter Signal configuration	Messages
	Task: Timer 1 Start: 11/12/2019 07:00:00 AM	Monitoring
	End: 11/12/2019 04:00:00 PM	Energy & costs
	Recurring task: Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday	Maint.
	Required pressure: psi Machine preselection: 12345678910112341516	Control
	Compressed air generation: ON Control valves: 1	SAM 4.0 Logic
	Channel: A B C D	Timer control
		Initial Start-up
	Clear Save Cancel	Configuration
07-03519		Contact 1

Fig. 77 Menu: *Timer control – Task – Overview*

9. Touch the Overview tab.

The Timer control - Task - Overview menu is displayed.

- 10. All settings for the selected task are shown clearly arranged on a page in the *Overview* menu. You cannot make any changes in here.
- 11. Press the Save key.

The task is saved and the Task menu closes.



An error message will appear in case of a conflict with a previously saved task. The new task cannot be saved until the conflict is eliminated.

The following conflicts may occur:

- A conflict arises if two different tasks are set up to change the same parameter at the same time.
- New recurring tasks must not conflict with existing recurring tasks.
- New non-recurring tasks must not conflict with existing non-recurring tasks.

7.17.2 Recurring task

If a task is set up as a recurring task, it is repeated at regular intervals.

<u>0</u> 11

A recurring task has lower priority than a non-recurring task that is active at the same time.



Precondition The *Timer control* menu is displayed.

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGE	R 4.0 4	utomatic	101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Time control Ta	sk Recurring	g task		Status
	Recurring task :	Weekly recurring ta	sk 🕑		Messages
		Monday	Tuesday		Monitoring
	Repeat :	S Wednesday	Thursday		Energy & costs Mntnce
		Friday	Saturday		Control
		Sunday		ок	SAM 4.0 Logic
					Time control
					Initial Start-up
					Configuration
07-0277					Contact

Fig. 78 Menu: Timer control – Task – Recurring task

- 1. Touch the Tasks tab.
- Touch the desired task. The *Task* menu is displayed.
- 3. Touch the Parameter tab.

The Timer control – Task – Parameter menu is displayed.

- Press the Recurring task key.
 The *Recurring task* menu is displayed.
- 5. Touch the symbol \bigotimes in the *Recurring task* row.
- 6. Select the *Weekly recurring task* option, for example.



- 7.17 Timer control
- 7. Touch the desired weekday.The selected weekday is indicated by a check mark "✓" in the check box.
- 8. Activate recurring function by placing a check mark "✓" in the *Recurring task* control box.
- 9. Press the OK key. The *Recurring task* menu closes.
- 10. Press the Save key.

The task is saved and the Task menu closes.

In the Timer control menu, recurring tasks are marked with a circle symbol.

7.17.3 Edit task

An existing task can be edited in the Task menu.

Precondition The *Timer control* menu is displayed

	SIGMA AIR MANAG	GER 4.0 4	Automatic	101 psi 12/11/2019 10:19:26 AM	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Time control				Status
	Tasks	Timeline			Messages
					Monitoring
	Compressed air generation ON A Mo Tu We Th Fr	New function			Energy & costs
	07:00 - 16:00				Mntnce
					Control
					SAM 4.0 Logic
					Initial Start-up
					Configuration
28					
07-C27					Confact

Fig. 79 Timer control menu

- 1. Touch the Tasks tab.
- 2. Touch the desired task.

The *Task* menu is displayed.

- 3. Enter the required settings.
- Press the Save key. The settings are saved and the menu closes.

î

Active tasks are marked with a yellow frame in the list.



7.17.4 Delete tasks

An existing task can be deleted in the *Task* menu.

Precondition The *Timer control* menu is displayed

- 1. Touch the Tasks tab.
- 2. Touch the task to be deleted. The *Task* menu is displayed.
- Press the Clear key. The task is deleted and the menu closes.

7.17.5 Timeline

All tasks and the parameters they influence are shown clearly arranged on a timeline in the *Timeline* menu. Any 16-hour period, past, present or future, can be viewed. The transparent visualization of the factors permits a clear understanding of the effects of the timer control.

Precondition The Timer control menu is displayed

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4	tomatic 101 g	DSI Operation
	Time control		Status
	Tasks Timeline		Messages
	-1m -1w -1d -12h 11/12/2019	+12h +1d +1w +1n	Monitoring
	Friday 06:00 08:00 10:00	11/11/2019 12:00 14:00 16:00 18:00 20:00	Energy & costs
	Task Compressed air generation ON		Mntnce
	Required pressure Standard		
	Max. permitted electrical power consumption Star	dard	Control
	Heat is requested Star	dard	SAM 4.0 Logic
	Compressed air generation C	N Standard	
	C1 0	N	Time control
	C2 0	N	Initial Start-up
	C3 C	N	
	C4 0	F	Configuration
	Control valves1 Automatic O	F	
07-C2776			Contact İ

Fig. 80 Menu Timer control – Timeline

1. Touch the Timeline tab.

The *Timeline* menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
-12h/+12h	Move half a day forward or back
-1d/+1d	Move a day forward or back
-1w/+1w	Move a week forward or back
-1m/+1m	Move a month forward or back



Element	Meaning
Date	Select the Set the date menu and enter the desired date
→ ←	Reset the time line to the current time
Timeline	The timeline can be shifted continuously to the left or right
Yellow line	Current time

Tab. 80 Meaning of the menu elements *Timeline*

2. Tap the time line and move it to the left or right.

	Set the da	te
Year	Month	Day
2016	1	29
		▼
Cai	ncel	Apply

- Fig. 81 Set the date menu
 - Alternatively, tap the *Date* field.
 The *Set the date* menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
Year	Set year
Month	Set month
Day	Set day
Arrow keys	Move up/down in the list
Cancel	Settings are not saved
Apply	Settings are saved

- Tab. 81 Meaning of the menu elements Set the date
 - 4. Use the arrow keys to set the current date:
 - Year
 - Month
 - Day
 - 5. Save the selected date using the Apply key.

7.17.6 Activating time control

To activate the time control, press the «Timer control» key on the operating panel of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0. In addition, you can also activate by means of I/O signals and by the control system.



Precondition At least one valid task must be created and saved in the time control settings In the *Configuration – Key lock* menu the «Timer control» key is released

- Press «Timer control» <a>[©]. The system returns a confirmation prompt.
- Confirm prompt with the Yes key.
 The «Timer control» o key lights up green.

Result SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 follows the scheduled tasks of the time control.

7.17.7 Example

The following example clearly illustrates, step-by-step, a frequent use case for the time control function.

Definition of task:

- Compressed air flow should be active on weekdays from 6 am to 8 pm.
- Compressed air flow should be deactivated on weekends from Friday at 8 pm to Monday at 6 am.
- This cycle is to be repeated every week.

Proposed solution:

Two tasks are required for the time control:

- Compressed air OFF weekdays
- Compressed air OFF weekends

Precondition Without timer control, compressed air flow is continuously active

The timer control function does not have any other tasks that conflict with the following settings The *Timer control* menu is displayed

- 1. Touch the Tasks tab.
- Press the New function key.
 The menu *Timer control Task* is displayed.



7

KAESER	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4	Automatic	101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Time control Task			Status
	Overview Parameter	Signal configuration		Messages
	Task: Com	npressed air OFF weekdays	Active	Monitoring
	Start: 06	6/17/2019 08:00:00 PM	Recurring task	Energy & costs
	End: 06	5/18/2019 06:00:00 AM		Control
	Required pressure:		psi X	
	Max. permitted electrical power consumption		kW X	SAM 4.0 LOGIC
	Heat is requested:	No	x	Time control
				Initial Start-up
		Clear	Save Cancel	Configuration
07-02967				Contact

Fig. 82 Task: "Compressed air OFF weekdays"

- Touch the Parameter tab.
 The *Timer control Task Parameter* menu is displayed.
- 4. Enter "Compressed air OFF weekdays" in the Task field.
- 5. Touch the symbol \bigotimes in the *Task* row.
- 6. Select the Active option.
- 7. Configure date and time settings for the task "Compressed air OFF weekdays".
- 8. Press the Recurring task key.

The *Recurring task* menu is displayed.



KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101	psi :19:26 AM	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Time control Task Recurring task		Status
	Recurring task Weekly recurring task		Messages
	🖸 Monday 🔽 Tuesday		Monitoring
	🖸 Wednesday 🛛 🖸 Thursday		Energy & costs
	Repeat : Friday Saturday		
	Sunday		SAM 4.0 Logic
	c	ĸ	Time control
			Initial Start-up
			Configuration
07-02968			Contact I

Fig. 83 Serial task menu for the task "Compressed air OFF weekdays"

- 9. Touch the symbol *S* in the *Recurring task* row.
- 10. Select the *Weekly recurring task* option.
- 11. Touch to select the control box for the weekdays *Monday*, *Tuesday*, *Wednesday* and *Thursday*.

The selected weekday is indicated by a check mark "✓" in the check box.

12. Press the OK key.

The *Recurring task* menu closes.

13. Touch the Signal configuration tab.



Compressed air flow is deactivated starting on Monday at 8 pm and ends on Tuesday at 6 am.

The period between start and end is one day.

The serial task function is used to set repetitions on additional weekdays.

An error message appears if the period between start and end is set at more than one day while simultaneously multiple weekdays are set using the serial task function.

The start time is the time at which compressed air flow is to be deactivated. The compressed air flow is reactivated at the end time.

The menu *Timer control – Task – Signal configuration* is displayed.

- 14. Activate the control field for the *Compressed air generation* parameter by tapping it.
 - A check mark "
 "
 "
 is displayed in the activated control field.
- 15. For the *Compressed air generation* parameter, set the *OFF* option.
- 16. Press the Save key.

The task is saved and the Timer control - Tasks menu is displayed.

17. Press the New function key.

The menu *Timer control – Task* is displayed.



KAESER	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Time control Task	Status
	Overview Parameter Signal configuration	Messages
	Task: Compressed air OFF weekends Active	Monitoring
	Start: 06/21/2019 08:00:00 PM	Energy & costs
	End: 06/24/2019 06:00:00 AM	
	Required pressure: psi X	
	Max. permitted electrical power on kW X	SAM 4.0 Logic
	Heat is requested: No X	Time control
		Initial Start-up
	Clear Save Cancel	Configuration
07.62969		Contact 1

Fig. 84 Task: "Compressed air OFF weekends"

18. Touch the Parameter tab.

The menu Timer control – Task – Parameter is displayed.

- 19. Enter "Compressed air OFF weekend" in the Task field.
- 20. Touch the symbol \bigotimes in the *Task* row.
- 21. Select the Active option.

ĵ

22. Configure date and time settings for the "Compressed air OFF weekends" task.

Deactivation of the compressed air flow starts on Friday at 8 pm and ends on Monday at 6 am.

The period between start and end is **three days**. Using the series task function, one weekly repetition is set for **Friday**.

23. Press the Recurring task key.

The *Recurring task* menu is displayed.



KAESER Kompressoren	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic	101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Time control Task Recurring task		Status
	Recurring task Weekly recurring task 💿		Messages
	Monday Tuesday		Monitoring
	Wednesday Thursday		Energy & costs
	Repeat Frday Saturday		Control
	Sunday	_	SAM 4.0 Logic
		ОК	Time control
			Initial Start-up
			Configuration
07-C2970			Contact 1



- 24. Touch the symbol ♥ in the *Recurring task* row.
- 25. Select the Weekly recurring task option.
- 26. Select the control box for the *Friday* weekday by touching it. The selected weekday is marked in the control box with a check mark "✓".
- 27. Press the OK key.

The Recurring task menu closes.

- 28. Touch the Signal configuration tab.
- 29. For the Compressed air generation parameter, set the OFF option.
- 30. Activate the control field for the *Compressed air generation* parameter by touching it. A check mark "✓" is displayed in the activated control field.
- 31. Press the Save key.

The task is saved and the *Timer control – Tasks* menu is displayed.



7

KAESER	SIGMA AIR MANAG	ER 4.0 4	Automatic	101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Time control				Status
	Tasks	Timeline			Messages
					Monitoring
	Compressed air OFF weekdays Mo Tu We Th	Compressed air OFF weekends	New function		Energy & costs
	20:00 - 06:00	20:00 - 06:00			Mntnce
					Control
					Time control
					Initial Start-up
					Configuration
7-023966					Contact

Fig. 86 *Timer control* menu with the two tasks

32. Touch the Timeline tab.

The menu *Timer control – Timeline* is displayed.

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Time control	Status
	Tasks Timeline	Messages
	-1m -1w -1d -12h 06/17/2019 +12h +1d +1w +1m	Monitoring
	Friday 06/18/2019 20:00 21:00 22:00 23:00 24:00 01:00 02:00 03:00	Energy & costs
	Task Compressed air OFF weekdays	Mntnce
	Required pressure Standard	
	Max. permitted electrical power consumption Standard	Control
	Heat is requested Standard	SAM 4.0 Logic
	Compressed air generation OFF	
	C1 OFF	Time control
	C2 OFF	Initial Start-up
	C3 OFF	
	C4 OFF	Configuration
07-C2971		Contact 1

Fig. 87 Timeline menu with the task "Compressed air OFF weekdays"



7.18 Data backup

	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Time control	Status
	Tasks Timeline	Messages
	-1m -1w -1d -12h 06/21/2019 +12h +12h +1d +1w +1m	Monitoring
	06/21/2019 Saturday 06/22/2019 20;00 22:00 00;00 02:00 04:00 06:00 08:00 10;00	Energy & costs
	Task Compressed air OFF weekends 06/22/2019 →	Mntnce
	Compressed air generatio (psi) OFF 06/22/2019 -	Control
	C1 OFF 06/22/2019 →	SAM 4.0 Logic
	C2 OFF 06/22/2019 →	Time control
	C3 OFF 06/22/2019 →	
	C4 OFF 06/22/2019 →	Initial Start-up
		Configuration
07-C2972		Contact

Fig. 88 Timeline menu with the task "Compressed air OFF weekends"

- 33. Check the settings and correct them if necessary in the Tasks menu.
- 34. Press the «Timer control» (key.

The system returns a confirmation prompt.

35. Confirm prompt with the Yes key.

The «Timer control» **(6)** key lights up green.

Result SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 follows the scheduled tasks of the time control.

7.18 Data backup

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 energy data is periodically backed up once per hour on the SD card. Data backup for energy data and station data can also be executed manually if necessary. The manual data backup overwrites the previously automatically backed up data. An authorized KAESER service representative can load the manually backed up data on the new device if the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is replaced.

Precondition An SD card with compatible file system (FAT32) and minimum 8 GB free memory is plugged into SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 (see Chapter 10.3"Software update"). Login with Access Level 2 *Configuration* (see Chapter 7.4 "User Login").



7.18 Data backup

KAESER Kompressoren	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8 Automatic 101	psi 9:26 AM	Configuration Access Mode
	Initial Start-up Data backup SD card inserted SD card detected	-	Status Messages
	Data backup 10/12/2015 10:00:00 AM Status Ready for data backup Periodic data backup activated Ves 10/14/2015 12:00:00 AM Last time executed		Monitoring Energy & costs
	Start data backup		Maint.
	Restore backed-up data		Control
	Data backup for fault diagnosis Status		SAM 4.0 Logic
	Data backup for fault diagnosis		
	SD card can be safely removed		Timer control
	ob call call be salely fellowed.		Initial Start-up
			Configuration
		-	Contact İ

Fig. 89 Data backup menu

 Press the Initial Start-up – Data backup key. The menu *Initial Start-up – Data backup* is displayed.

Element	Meaning
SD card inserted	An SD card has been physically inserted.
SD card detected	An SD card has been electronically detected.
Status	Displays whether data backup can be started.
Last time executed	Time of last successful data backup.
Start data backup	Key used to manually start data backup.
Restore backed-up data	Key used by a KAESER service technician to reload the data from the most recent backup on SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.
Perform data backup for diagnostics	Key used to start the backup of settings and measurement data for troubleshooting on the SD card.
SD card can be safely removed.	Key with which the SD card is securely logged off from the electronic con- trol (file system info at operating system level) so that is can subsequently be removed without data loss.

Tab. 82Meaning of the Data backup menu elements

- If needed, back up settings and station data using the Start data backup key or back up settings and measurement data using the Perform data backup for diagnostics key. The corresponding data are stored on the SD card.
- 3. If the backup is accessed via KAESER CONNECT (see 8.8 "KAESER CONNECT" section), the data are downloaded to the internet device and saved.


4. Press SD card can be safely removed. key prior to removing the SD card. The SD card is securely logged off from the electronic control and can be removed without the risk of data loss.

7.19 Control technology

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 uses a communication module for communicating with the user's control system. The communications parameters can be set and the communications status can be verified in the *Control technology* menu.



Depending on the communication module used, different parameters can be set in this menu.

Precondition

tion The required communications module is installed (see chapter 6.9 "Installation").

Login with Access Level 2 Configuration (see chapter 7.4 "User Login").

The communication parameters are known. Request the required information from your IT department.

	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4	Automatic 10	D1 psi 16 10:19:26 AM Access Mode
	Initial Start-up	Control technology	Status
	Detected module type : Status :	Modbus TCP Unknown	Messages
	Communication status :	No connection	Monitoring
	IP address :	192.168.132.4	Energy & costs
	Net mask :	255.255.0.0	Maint.
	Gateway :	169.254.100.97	Control
	Enable Com-Module	Accept settings	SAM 4.0 Logic
			Timer control
			Initial Start-up
			Configuration
07-C2664			Contact

Fig. 90 Control technology menu – Modbus TCP as a sample communications module

- Press the Initial Start-up Control technology key. The *Control technology* menu is displayed.
- 3. Configure the communications parameters required for the respective communications module.



7.20 Activating SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0

- Apply settings using the Accept settings key.
 The communication module is started with the set parameters.
 Communication with the control electronics is working.
- 5. Verify the communication parameters.



"Technical description SAM 4.0 process image", document number 7_9696_PA.

7.19.1 Activating remote control

Precondition In the Configuration - Key lock menu the «Remote control» key is released.

- Press the «Remote control» key.
 The system returns a confirmation prompt.
- Confirm with Yes.
 The «Remote control» key lights up green.
 You can control SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 from a central control center.

7.20 Activating SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0

A WARNING

Risk of injury during an automatic machine start.

- > Before switching on, make sure that all conditions are met.
- Compare the settings for initial start-up of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 with those listed in the operating manual.
- ► Use the "Commissioning" check list.

To be checked	Description	Confirmed?
Machines are set up	Chapter 6.13 "Setting machines"	
Date and time is set	Chapter 7.6 "Date and time"	
The configuration is imported	Chapter 7.5 "Importing the configuration"	
The configuration has been checked	The "Engineering Base" settings shown (chapter 7 "Initial Start-up") have been verified and are correct	
Machines are connected	Chapters 7.13 "SIGMA NETWORK I/O" and 7.14 "PROFIBUS"	
Required pressure is set	Chapter 7.16 "Control"	

Tab. 83 "Commissioning" check list



Initial Start-up

7.20 Activating SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0

Precondition No personnel are working on the machine.

All access doors on the machines are closed and locked.

The ambient conditions for SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 as described in Chapter 5 "Installation and Operating Conditions" are met.

The temperature of the machines is not below +37 °F.

All installation activities and wiring tasks have been properly and completely performed according to chapter 6 "Installation".

There is no bus error.

All items in the "Commissioning" check list are complied with.

Login with Access Level 2 Configuration (see 7.4 "User Login").

- Press the Status Manual preselect key. The *Manual preselect* menu is displayed.
- 2. Use the buttons in the column to the left of the P&I symbol to select the required machine. The pre-selection button changes to green.

Compressed air station with compressed air generation in the Manual operating mode	Compressed air station without compressed air generation in the Manual operating mode
1. Set the machines to remote mode.	1. Switch on the machines.

1. Press «Automatic» @.

The system returns a confirmation prompt.

2. Press OK to confirm the prompt.

The «Automatic» **@**key lights up **green**.

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 assumes control of the compressed air station.



°

8 Operation

8.1 Calculated values

Except for pressure and temperatures, the values displayed at SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 are usually not measured values. These values are calculated from specified nominal values, input values and run times. Deviations from measured values are unavoidable. In conventional connections, only machines with the "motor running" feedback signal are taken into consideration for the calculation.

8.2 Switching on and off

Precondition The ambient conditions as described in Chapter 5 "Installation and Operating Conditions" are met. In the *Configuration – Key lock* menu, the keys on the operating panel are available.



Fig. 91 Keys on the operating panel

8.2.1 Switching the compressed air station on

- Press «Compressed air generation» <u>0</u>. The system returns a confirmation prompt.
- Confirm with Yes.
 The «Compressed air generation» okey lights up green.

8.2.2 Activating automatic mode

- Press «Automatic» @. The system returns a confirmation prompt.
- Confirm with Yes.
 The «Automatic» ekey lights up green.
 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 assumes control of the compressed air station.



8.2.3 Activating remote control

- Confirm with Yes.
 The «Remote control» key lights up green.
 You can control SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 from a central control center.

8.2.4 Activating timer control

- Press «Timer control» <a>[©]. The system returns a confirmation prompt.
- Confirm with Yes.
 The «Timer control» key lights up green.
 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 follows the scheduled tasks.

8.2.5 Switching off the compressed air station

You can switch off the compressed air supply for the entire station at SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.

1. Press «Compressed air generation» U.

The system returns a confirmation prompt.

2. Confirm with Yes.

The compressed air station shuts down and **compressed air is no longer delivered**. The «Compressed air generation» **(b)** key lights up **red**.

8.3 Help function

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 features an integrated Help function. A matching description can be displayed for the menu currently open.

1. Press the 👔 key.

The Help page for the current menu appears.

- 2. If the Help page takes more than one screen page, scroll up or down with two fingers [].
- 3. Tap underlined terms to open additional Help pages.
- 4. Use the Back/forward keys to scroll up and down through the Help pages.
- 5. Tap theContents key to open the table of contents for the Help function. A list of Help topics will be displayed.

A glossary can also be opened from the table of contents.

6. Press the Close key.

The Help page closes and the current SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 menu is displayed again.



The images shown in the help pages are intended only as examples. The menus or functions may be different or currently unavailable for the installed software.

The installed version of the software may also include functions not yet described, or described differently, in the Help function.



Status

8.4 Status

The Status menu has the following sub-menus:

- "Overview"
 - "Pressure curve"
 - "Pressure display"
 - "Current values"
 - "History"
- "Manual preselect"
 - Compressed air generators
 - Dryer
- Sources"
 - "Pressure and power"
 - "Preselect"
 - "Priorities"
 - "Control valves"
- "Station"
- 1. Press the Status key.
- 2. Select the required sub-menu.
- 3. If the sub-menu page displayed has several pages, touch one of the tabs to open the corresponding page.

8.4.1 Overview – Pressure curve

The *Status – Overview – Pressure curve* menu displays the "network pressure" of the entire station as a graphic representation of the pressure progression curve. The machine's operating points are graphically displayed.

One or more "pressure transducers" in the network provide the measured values. If multiple pressure transducers are used, the software calculates a weighted mean value (see chapter 7.16 "Control" – "Parameter").

The values are displayed in the previously set "unit" above the time axis shown.



8.4 Status



Fig. 92 Pressure curve menu

8.4.1.1 Network pressure

The system displays the progression curve of the "system pressure" of the air station over the time axis.

The values are displayed in the set "unit".

8.4.1.2 Pressure performance

Ratio of the time period the network pressure is within the range between the pressure range limit and the demand pressure and the time outside this range. The calculated value of the pressure quality in the displayed time period.

8.4.1.3 Required pressure

The required pressure is the minimum pressure required by the consumers in the compressed air network (measured with the "pressure transducer").

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 usually maintains the demand pressure with a maximum deviation of 1.5 psi. For energetic reasons, the operating pressure is to be set as low as possible, i.e., not higher as required for the consumers within the compressed air network. A pressure of 14.5 psi higher than required causes approximately 6 % more energy consumption.

8.4.1.4 Pressure range limit

The pressure range limit is the maximum permissible pressure in the compressed air station. This value may be specified by the compressed air consumer or the compressed air station.

8.4.1.5 Volumetric flow rate

Current compressed air volume delivered by the entire compressed air station per time unit.



8.4.2 Overview – Pressure display

The *Overview – Pressure display* menu displays the current "system pressure" as numerical value in a large font.

This display type enables good legibility from a larger distance.

The values are displayed in the set "unit".



Fig. 93 *Pressure display* menu

8.4.3 Overview – Current values

Current data of the entire station are displayed in the Status - Overview - Current values menu.



8.4 Status

8

	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8 Automatic 101 psi	
	Status Overview	Status
	Pressure curve Pressure display Current values History	Messages
	Power 70.84 MM	Monitoring
	Volumetric flow rate: 493 CFM	Energy & costs
	Compressed air consumption: 490 CFM	Maint.
	Specific power: 5.719 kW/CFM	Control
	Number of motor starts: 7 1/h	SAM 4.0 Logic
	Number of load changes: 11 1/h	Timer control
		Initial Start-up
		Configuration
08-02574		Contact

Fig. 94 Current values menu

8.4.3.1 Power

Displays the electrical power currently drawn by the entire station. The values are displayed in the set "unit".

8.4.3.2 Volumetric flow rate

Current compressed air volume delivered by the entire station. The values are displayed in the set "unit".

8.4.3.3 Compressed air consumption

Current compressed air usage in the compressed air system. The values are displayed in the set "unit".

8.4.3.4 Buffer volume

Calculated buffer volume in the entire compressed air system. The values are displayed in the set "unit".

8.4.3.5 Specific power

This standard value is used as a reference value in the assessment of the station's efficiency. The value is calculated from the power consumption per volumetric flow. Lower values indicate a high degree of efficiency.

8.4.3.6 Number of motor starts

The number of motor starts of all machines within the last 60 minutes.



8.4.3.7 Number of load changes

Number of load changes (from one "operating point" to another) of all machines within the last 60 minutes.

8.4.4 **Overview – History**

This sub-menu page records the maximum, mean or minimum pressure values and other sum values.

KAESER	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8 Automatic 101 psi	Configuration A Access Mode
	Status Overview	Status
	Pressure curve Pressure display Current values History	Messages
	Pressure maximum: 109 psi	Monitoring
	Occurred on:06/14/2015 22:59:12 PM	Energy & costs
	Pressure minimum: 99.2 psi 04/06/2015 05:11:33 AM Occurred on:	Maint.
	03/01/2015 12:00:00 AM Since: Reset	Control
		SAM 4.0 Logic
	Average pressure: 100.3 psi	Timer control
	Energy consumption: 116800.38 kWh	
	Volume: 721231.4 cu.ft	Initial Start-up
	Specific power: 0.146 kW/CFM	Configuration
	Since: 03/01/2015 12:00:05 AM Reset	
		Contact

Fig. 95 History menu

8.4.4.1 Pressure maximum

The maximum pressure in the network, measured from the reference time set. Date and time of the event are also stored. This value corresponds to the highest measured pressure in the network and can be used to evaluate the compressed air quality.

The values are displayed in the set "unit".

8.4.4.2 Pressure minimum

The minimum pressure in the network, measured from the reference time set. Date and time of the event are also stored. This value corresponds to the lowest measured pressure in the network and can be used to evaluate the compressed air quality. The values are displayed in the set "unit".

8.4.4.3 Reset

The set reference time is reset to the current date and the current time.



8.4.4.4 Average pressure

The mean pressure in the network, calculated since the reference time set. The values are displayed in the set "unit".

8.4.4.5 Energy consumption

Energy consumption of machines monitored by SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0, calculated since the reference time set.

The values are displayed in the set "unit".

8.4.4.6 Volume

Compressed air volume delivered by the station, calculated since the reference time set. The values are displayed in the set "unit".

8.4.4.7 Specific power

This standard value is used as a reference value in the assessment of the station's efficiency. The value is calculated from the power consumption per volumetric flow. Lower values indicate a high degree of efficiency.

The values are displayed in the set "unit".

8.4.5 Manual preselect

In the *Manual preselect* menu individual machines can be pre-selected or deselected for compressed air production or compressed air treatment. For maintenance work, for example, you may be forced to temporarily deactivate individual machines.



Fault messages, warning messages and maintenance messages are suppressed for deselected machines.



If you deselect more than one machine simultaneously, the compressed air supply may no longer be sufficient.

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 *Configuration* (see 7.4 "User Login" section) Air network to be controlled is known.



8 8.4

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8 Automatic	101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Status Manual preselect		Status
	Compressed air generators Dryer		Messages
			Monitoring
	C1 - ASD 35		Energy & costs
	2 C2 - ASD 40		Mntnce
	3 C3 - ASD 50		Control
	4 C5 - BSD 65		SAM 4.0 Logic
	5 C7 - BSD 83		Time control
	6 C8 - CSD 85		Initial Start-up
			Configuration
08-025-41	Machine preselected Machine deselected		Contact

Fig. 96 Manual preselect menu

- 1. Press the Status Manual preselect key.
- 2. Tap the requested tab, e.g. *Compressed air generators* The *Manual preselect* menu is displayed

Symbol	Meaning
\bigcirc	Machine in READY mode
	Machine in IDLE mode
	Machine in LOAD mode
\bigcirc	Machine has warning messages
\bigcirc	Machine has fault messages



Status



Meaning Machine cannot be controlled remotely (local mode)

Tab. 84 Meaning of the symbols in the *Manual preselect* menu

- 3. Use the buttons in the column to the left of the P&I symbol to select or deselect the machine as appropriate.
 - The button is white: The machine is deselected. It is **not** used.
 - Deselecting a machine running in Load mode causes it to be switched from SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 mode to idle or standstill. The deselected machine does not switch to local mode.
 - The button is green: The machine is selected. It is being used to generate compressed air or for compressed air treatment.

8.4.6 Sources

The *Sources* menu has the following sub-menus:

- "Pressure and power"
- "Preselect"
- "Priorities"
- "Control valves"

These sub-menus provide an organized representation of setting values and specifications from the currently valid configuration.

8.4.6.1 Pressure and power

The *Pressure and power* menu provides an overview of the current setting values and priorities for the various operating modes.



8

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8 Automatic 101 psi						Operation ACCESS MODE
	Status Sources						Status
	Pressure and power Preselect		Priorities	с	ontrol valves		Messages
	Source	Standard	\bigcirc		Control technology		Monitoring
	Required pressure	94 psi	Θ				Energy & costs
	Max. permitted electrical power consumption	100.00 kW	G				Mntnce
	Heat is requested	No	Θ				Control
	Compressed air generation	ON	G				SAM 4.0 Logic
	Control	028	Θ				Time control
	Automatic	OFF					Initial Start-up
	Time control	OFF					Configuration
08-C2542							Contact İ

Fig. 97 Pressure and power menu

- 1. Press the Status Sources key.
- 2. Touch the *Pressure and power* tab. The Pressure and power menu is displayed.

Element	Priority	Meaning
Source	-	Parameter and operating state name
Green-colored field	-	A green field indicates that the corresponding function is currently ac- tive. In the case of a parameter, it indicates the active set-point value.
Grey-colored field	-	A grey field indicates that the corresponding parameter cannot be af- fected.
Control technology	1	Parameters and operating states in the Remote control operating mode through a master control panel
I/O	2	Parameters and operating states in the Remote control operating mode through digital or analogue inputs.
6	3	Parameters and operating states in the Timer control operating mode
Standard	4	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 Default setting without additional influences from additional or external control functions

Tab. 85 Meaning of the *Pressure and power* menu



8.4.6.2 Preselect

The *Preselect* menu displays an overview showing which machines switch to LOAD in the corresponding operating mode.

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 16 Automatic 101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Status Sources	Status
	Pressure and power Preselect Priorities Control valves	Messages
	Source Machine preselection	Monitoring
	Standard 12345673900123456	Energy & costs
	G	
		SAM 4.0 Logic
	Control	Time control
	technology	Initial Start-up
		Configuration
		Contact

Fig. 98 Preselect menu

- 1. Press the Status Sources key.
- 2. Touch the *Preselect* tab.
 - The Preselect menu is displayed.

Element	Priority	Meaning
Source	-	Operating mode
Machine preselection	-	List of available machines. The number in the symbol indicates the machine number. The color of the symbol indicates whether the corresponding machine works in normal operation (green) or has fault message (red).
Field in the <i>Source</i> column is green	-	A green field indicates that the corresponding function is currently ac- tive. In the case of machines, it means that these machines are pre- selected for use in compressed air generation.
Standard	1	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 Default setting without additional influences from additional or external control functions
6	2	Operating states in the Timer control operating mode
I/O	3	Operating states in the Remote control operating mode through digital or analog inputs.



8 8.4

Element	Priority	Meaning
Control technology	4	Operating states in the Remote control operating mode through a master control panel

Tab. 86 Meaning of the Preselect menu

8.4.6.3 Priorities

The *Priorities* menu displays an overview showing the priority of each machine for switching to LOAD and IDLE.

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 16 Automatic 101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Status Sources	Status
	Pressure and power Preselect Priorities Control valves	Messages
	Source Switch-in priority	Monitoring
	Machine 1234567891011213141516	Energy & costs
	Standard 00000000000000000000000000000000000	Control
	Source Switch-off priority	SAM 4.0 Logic
	Machine 1234567891011213141516	Time control
	Standard 00000000000000000000000000000000000	Initial Start-up
		Configuration
8-C25553		Contact

Fig. 99 Priorities menu

- 1. Press the Status Sources key.
- Touch the *Priorities* tab.
 The *Priorities* menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
Source	Operating mode
Switch-in priority	Machine cut-in priority
Switch-off priority	Machine cut-out priority
"+"	Machine has a higher priority than normal
"_"	Machine has a lower priority than normal
"0"	Machine has a normal priority
Machine	Number of machine (1–16)



Operation

 Element
 Meaning

 Standard
 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 Default setting without additional influences from additional or external control functions

Tab. 87 Meaning of the *Priorities* menu

8.4.6.4 Control valves

The *Control valves* menu displays an overview showing the sources that control the regulating valves.

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MAN	IAGER 4.0 16	Automatic	101 psi 12/11/2019 10:19:26 АМ	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Status So	urces			Status
	Pressure and po	wer Preselect	Priorities	Control valves	Messages
	Source	Automatic			Monitoring
	Standard	123			Mntnce
	\bigcirc				Control
	1/0 🖊				SAM 4.0 Logic
	Control technology				Time control
					Initial Start-up
					Configuration
08-03514					Contact

- Fig. 100 Control valves menu
 - 1. Press the Status Sources key.
 - 2. Touch the Control valves tab.

The Control valves menu is displayed.

Element	Priority	Meaning
Source	-	Operating mode
Automatic	-	List of available regulating valves, each with color display of the oper- ating mode
Field in the <i>Source</i> column is green	-	A green field indicates that the corresponding function is currently ac- tive. In the case of machines, it means that these machines are pre- selected for use in compressed air generation
Standard	1	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 Default setting without additional influences from additional or external control functions
6	2	Operating states in the Timer control operating mode



Status

8 8.4

Element	Priority	Meaning
I/O	3	Operating states in the Remote control operating mode through digital
		or analog inputs.
Control technology	4	Operating states in the Remote control operating mode through a master control panel

Tab. 88 Meaning of the Control valves menu

8.4.7 Station

The *Status – Station* menu displays the P&I diagram of the compressed air station. The P&I diagram illustrates the structure, operating modes and important data of the station. These data are continuously updated.



Fig. 101 Station menu

 Press the Status – Station key. The *Station* menu is displayed.



8.4 Status

8

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi	Observation ACCESS MODE
Station	Status Station C1 - ASD 35	Status
Compressors	Component type : ASD 35	Messages
C1 - ASD 35	C2 - ASD 50 Local network pressure: 101 psi Internal pressure: 105 psi	Energy & costs
C3 - BSD 65	Inlet temperature: 68 °F Airend discharge temperature: 170 °F Electric power consumption: 18,50 kW	Mntnce
C4 - BSD 75	C3 - ASD 65 C3 - ASD 65 C3 - ASD 65 C3 - ASD 65 C3 - ASD 65 C4 - C4 - C4 - C4 - C4 - C4 - C4 - C4 -	Control
Dryer Eilter	Control: QUADRO Run hours : 272 h	SAM 4.0 Logic
Air receiver	C4 - BSD 75 C4 - BSD 75 Maintenance interval : -450 h Group alarm : No	Initial Start-up
Control valves	Group warning : No Condensate drain fault : No	Configuration
	Close 80% Ø	Contact 1
08-C2567		

Fig. 102 Machine details

- 2. Touch the P&I symbol to display the selected machine details.
 - The system opens a window with the current data of the selected machine.
- 3. The display of the symbols in the P&I diagram changes with the operating state of the corresponding machine.

Example: P&I symbol for a compressor in different operating states:

Sign	Meaning
C1	Machine in READY mode
C1	Machine in IDLE mode
C1	Machine in LOAD mode
	Machine has warning messages or service messages
C1	Machine has fault messages



8 8.4

Sign	Meaning
C1	Machine in local mode
C1	Machine is deselected.
Further color codes	See chapter 8.4.8 "colour codes"



8.4.8 Color coding

In the menus *Status – Overview*, *Status – Station*, *Monitoring – Compressed air consumption* and *Monitoring – Specific power* the operating states of the machines / the station are identified by means of color codes at the icons in the P&I diagram and compressor status graphs.

8.4.8.1 Meaning of the color codes

Color	Meaning	Explanation	
Red:	Machine has a fault	Group alarm for machine	
	Station OFF	The compressed air generation for the entire station has been switched off	
Blue:	Machine be con- trolled remotely	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 cannot control the compressor	
	Manual operation	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 in manual operation	
		The compressed air generators are switched so that they run in local mode	
Orange:	Group warning	Group warning for machine	
Pink:	Emergency mode active	Machine is in emergency mode and is used only when absolutely necessary to ensure the supply of the required compressed air	
Green:	Forced LOAD RUN	The machine is manually forced to operating point LOAD RUN. For 60 minutes, the machine is primarily used for the compressed air supply (and accordingly run in LOAD RUN) if permitted by the compressed air consumption (complying with the upper pressure band limit)	
Brown:	Standby machine	Machine is used as a standby machine and is used only when abso- lutely necessary to ensure the supply of the required compressed air. However, unlike a machine in emergency mode, 2 hours of load run operation per week are also ensured	
Gray:	Machine is de-se- lected.	The machine is de-selected on SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0. The ma- chine is no longer used for the compressed air supply. Notifications are ignored	



8.4 Status

8

Color	Meaning	Explanation
Black:	Machine in oper- ating mode LOAD	Speed trend for variable-speed compressed air generators

Tab. 90 Meaning of the color codes

8.4.8.2 Illustration of the operating states of compressed air generators

Menu	Illustration	Color codes	
Status – Overview	Bar diagram underneath each compressor	red, orange or blue, green,	
Monitoring – Compressed air consumption	status graph Line graph of the compressor status graph	pink, brown, depending on priority Black	
Monitoring – Specific power			
Status – Station	Color of compressed air generator symbol	red, orange	
	Dot representation next to compressed air generator icon - if available	blue, green, pink, brown, de- pending on priority	

Tab. 91 Illustration of the operating states of compressed air generators

8.4.8.3 Illustration of the operating states of the station

Menu	Illustration	Color codes
Status – Overview	Operating state of the station in the form of a colored	red, blue, depending
Monitoring – Compressed air consumption	bar at the top end of the operating state diagram	on priority
Monitoring – Specific power		

Tab. 92 Illustration of the operating states of the station

8.4.8.4 Priorities

For the operating states of the compressed air generators, the following descending priority applies to the bottom colored lines:

- Red
- Orange
- no color

For the operating states of the compressed air generators, the following descending priority applies to the top colored lines:

- Blue
- Green
- Pink
- Brown
- no color



For the operating states of the station, the following descending priority applies:

Red

8.4

- Blue
- no color

8.4.8.5 Example: Icon in the P&I diagram

In the menu *Status – Station*, the following colored dots are shown at the P&I icons, depending on the operating mode. Meaning of color coding, see table 90

Icon	Meaning
C1	Colored dot on P&I icon (in the example: blue)

Tab. 93 Icon in the P&I diagram

8.4.8.6 Example: Compressor status graphs

In the menus *Status – Overview, Monitoring – Compressed air consumption* and *Monitoring – Specific power* the operating states of the individual machines (compressor status graphs - lower diagram) are identified by means of colored lines and bars. Meaning of color coding, see table 90



Fig. 103

3 Colored lines and bars in the compressor status graphs diagram



8.5 Selecting a machine



Fig. 104 Device selection list

- 1 Device selection list
- 2 Function selection bar
- 3 Station key

The device selection list 1 is shown on the left side of the "touch screen" and the function selection bar 2 is shown on the right side. Press Station 3 to select information menus for the entire compressed air station.

The menu content depends of the function selected in the function selection bar.



Fig. 105 Device class

- (4) Device class collapsed
- 5 Device class expanded: Machines can be selected individually

Under the Station key (3), machines with the same function are arranged as a device class (4), for example,

- Compressors
- Dryer
- Air receiver
- Filter
- Condensate treatment
- Control valves
- Data points



8 8.5

Selecting a machine

When you press the key for a device class (4), for example, Compressors, this class will expand and every machine/component in this class is displayed with its own key (5).

Press the device class key 4 a second time and the class is collapsed.

If a machine/component (5) is selected in the device class (4) using a key, a status menu opens which displays general and current information about the selected machine/component.

The content and scope of the status menu is dependent on the selected machine/component and their connection to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0. It may be divided into several sub-pages (tabs).

Possible sub-pages:

- "Serial and power data"
- "Characteristic curves"
- "Control"
- "Hours counter"
- "Control" ("Control valves")
- "Parameter" ("Control valves")

8.5.1 Serial and power data

In the *Serial and power data* menu the following parameters can be displayed for the selected machine/component:

Ç

°

The displayed data is drawn from the "Engineering Base" configuration.

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8 Automatic 101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
Station	Status C1 ASD 35	Status
Compressors	Serial and power data Characteristic curves Control Hours counter	Messages
C1 - ASD 35	Component type: ASD 35	Monitoring
C2 - ASD 50	Serial number: ASD.3 Serial number: 1753 Equipment number: 4744800 Manufacturer: KAESER	Energy & costs
C3 - ASD 65	Year of manufacture: 2015 Variable speed: No	Maint.
C4 - BSD 75	Add-on dryer: No Water-cooled: No Heat recovery: No	Control
Dryer	Gydone separator. No	SAM 4.0 Logic
Air receiver	Maximum pressure: 126 psi Rated pressure: 109 psi	Timer control
► Filter	Minimum pressure: 77.1 psi Rated power: 156.000 kW Idle power: 31.500 kW	Initial Start-up
	Rated volumetric flow rate: 833 CFM	Configuration
08-C2393		Contact

Fig. 106 Serial and power data menu

Element	Meaning
Component type	Type designation of the machine/component



8

8.5 Selecting a machine

Element	Meaning
Part number	Material number of the machine/component
Serial number	Serial number of the machine/component
Equipment number	KAESER-specific equipment no.
Manufacturer	Name of the manufacturer of the machine/component
Year of manufacture	Year of manufacture for the machine/component
Variable speed	Availability of the "variable speed" option
Add-on dryer	Availability of the "add-on dryer" option
Water-cooled	Availability of the "water-cooled" option
Heat recovery	Availability of the "heat recovery" option
Cyclone separator	Availability of the "centrifugal separator" option
Maximum pressure	Maximum gauge working pressure for which the machine/component is designed
Rated pressure	Pressure for a certain design condition relative to a certain rated power and rated flow rate
Minimum pressure	Minimum working pressure for which the machine/component is de- signed
Rated power	Power consumption of the machine at rated pressure
Idle power	Power consumption of the machine at the IDLE operating point
Rated volumetric flow rate	Machine flow rate at rated pressure

Tab. 94Meaning of the menu elements in the Serial and power data menu

8.5.2 Characteristic curves

The *Characteristic curves* menu graphically displays the characteristic curves of machines (e.g. for variable-speed machines: flow rate vs. speed).



8

8.5 Selecting a machine



Fig. 107 Characteristic curves menu

8.5.3 Control

In the Control menu the "Engineering Base" settings for the selected machine can be displayed:

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8 Automatic 101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
Station	Status C1 ASD 35	Status
Compressors	Serial and power data Characteristic curves Control Hours Counter	Messages
C1 - ASD 35		Monitoring
C2 - ASD 50	Time for pressure forecast	Energy & costs
C3 - ASD 65	Load time monitoring active No	Mntnce
C4 - BSD 75	Interval for load time monitoring 10 min	Control
▶ Dryer	Maximum load ratio 80 %	SAM 4.0 Logic
Air receiver	126 psi 109 psi	Time control
► Filter	77.1 psi 156.000 kW 31.500 kW	Initial Start-up
	833 CFM	Configuration
08-02947		Contact

Fig. 108 Control menu



8

8.5 Selecting a machine

Element	Meaning
<i>Time for pressure forecast</i>	Adjustments of the flow rate of a compressed air generator with variable-speed drive are applied to the current pressure of the station with a delay. To compensate for this delay, the <i>Time for pressure forecast</i> parameter can be used to configure a time period for which the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 generates a prediction of the future pressure value.
Load time monitoring active	Load run time monitoring is required for compressed air generators not designed for continuous operation. The <i>Yes</i> option is used to activate load run time monitoring.
Interval for load time monitoring	The <i>Interval for load time monitoring</i> parameter is used to configure the time peri- od for which the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 monitors the load run proportion.
Maximum load ratio	The <i>Maximum load ratio</i> parameter is used to configure the maximum permissible proportion of load run (as a percentage) during the period of load run time monitoring. By means of cycling operation of the compressed air generators, SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 ensures that the maximum load run proportion is not exceeded.

Tab. 95 Meaning of the menu elements in the Control menu

8.5.4 Hours counter

In the *Hours counter* menu the following parameters can be displayed or configured for the selected machine:

KAESER	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8 Auton	natic	101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
Station	Status C1 ASD 35			Status
Compressors	Serial and power data Characteristic curves	Control	Hours counter	Messages
C1 - ASD 35	Run hours :	759 h		Monitoring
C2 - ASD 50	Load hours : Run hours until next maintenance :	756 h 0 h		Energy & costs
C3 - ASD 65				Maint.
C4 - BSD 75	Load run time since start :	0 min		Control
► Dryer	effective weekly load runtime :	43 h		SAM 4.0 Logic
Air receiver	Is standby machine :	No	•	Timer control
► Filter	Emergency mode active :	No	•	Initial Start-up
	Force machine load run :	No	•	Configuration
				Contact
00-02340				

Fig. 109 Hours counter menu

Element	Meaning
Run hours	Display of the total machine run time.



8

8.5 Selecting a machine

Element	Meaning
Load hours	Display of the machine run time in operating point ON LOAD.
Run hours until next maintenance	Display of the remaining machine run time until the next maintenance.
Load run time since start	Display of the machine run time in operating point ON LOAD since the most recent machine start.
Effective weekly runtime in load	Display of the machine run time in operating point ON LOAD in the current week.
Is standby machine	By configuring the <i>Yes</i> option the selected machine is used on a secondary basis as needed. On weekdays from Tuesday to Thursday between 8:00 AM and 4:00 PM, an attempt is made to achieve a minimum total load run time of two hours. This avoids damage due to insufficient use. This feature ensures that the machine is available for compressed air production.
Emergency mode active	As for the <i>Is standby machine</i> , element, however without minimum load run time.
Force machine load run	The <i>Yes</i> option is used to switch the machine to the ON LOAD operating point for up to 30 minutes - provided there is demand in the compressed air network. This makes it possible to check if the concerned machine is ready for operation, although as a result of the machine's characteristics, SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 would currently not or only rarely switch the machine to the ON LOAD operating point. No more than one machine should be used in this manner at the same time.

Tab. 96 Meaning of the menu elements in the *Hours counter* menu

8.5.5 Control (Control valves)

In the *Control* menu you can display or set the following parameters for the selected regulating valve:



8

8.5 Selecting a machine

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8 Automatic 101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
Station	Status DHS1 DHS 80G	Status
Compressors	Serial and power data Control Parameter Hours counter	Messages
► Dryer		Monitoring
Air receiver	Operational message OFF 📀	Energy & costs
► Filter	Operation normal 📀	Maint.
Condensate treatment	Control Automatic 🜑	Control
 Control valves 		SAM 4.0 Logic
DHS1 - DHS 80 G		Timer control
Datapoints		Initial Start-up
		Configuration
08-C3589		Contact 1

Fig. 110 Control menu

Element	Meaning
Operational message	Use the option <i>Yes</i> for enabling the sending of messages for pressure monitoring.
Operation	Operating functions are set to operate the air-main charging system in four dif- ferent control characteristics.
Control	Set <i>Valve closed</i> to close the air-main charging system.

Tab. 97 Meaning of the menu elements in the Control menu

8.5.6 Parameter (Control valves)

In the *Parameter* menu you can display or set the following parameters for the selected regulating valve:



8.6 Monitoring

8

KAESER	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8 Automatic 101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
Station	Status DHS1 DHS 80G	Status
Compressors	Serial and power data Control Parameter Hours counter	Messages
► Dryer		Monitoring
Air receiver		Energy & costs
► Filter	Closing hysteresis 7.25 psi	Maint.
Condensate treatment	Opening time 25.00 %	Control
▼ Control valves	Closing time 25.00 %	SAM 4.0 Logic
DHS1 - DHS 80 G	Threshold value "Pressure too high" 7.25 psi	Timer control
Datapoints	Threshold value "Pressure too low" 7.25 psi	Initial Start-up
		Configuration
A V 18-C3590		Contact 1

Fig. 111 Parameter menu

Element	Meaning
Opening pressure	Pressure at which the regulating valve opens in automatic mode.
Closing hysteresis	Differential to opening pressure at which regulating valve closes.
Opening time	Time as a percentage in which the regulating valve opens relative to the maximum speed.
Closing time	Time as a percentage in which the regulating valve closes relative to the maximum speed.
<i>Threshold value "Pressure too high"</i>	Switching threshold for the pressure excess warning.
<i>Threshold value "Pressure too low"</i>	Switching threshold for the pressure shortfall warning.

Tab. 98 Meaning of the menu elements in the Parameter menu

8.6 Monitoring

The *Monitoring* menu has the following sub-menus:

- "Compressed air consumption"
- "Specific power"
- "Measurement data"
- "Export"



8.6.1 Compressed air consumption

The *Compressed air consumption* menu displays an overview of the station providing important data (such as system pressure consumption) and the load times of the individual machines. This enables the user to analyze the operating state of the station during a specific period of time in the past.



- Fig. 112 Menu Monitoring Compressed air consumption
 - 1. Press the Monitoring Compressed air consumption key.

The *Monitoring – Compressed air consumption* menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
1 hour / 4 secs.	Use \bigcirc to select one of the four provided time intervals. The station data for the selected time period are displayed
<<< / >>>	Moving the time slot forward/backward by larger intervals
< / >	Moving the time slot forward/backward by smaller intervals
05.03.2015	Input field for the desired date for which you want to display the station data
11:20:00	Input field for the desired time for which you want to display the station data
	With SAM 4.0-16, selection of machines back/next
Network pressure	Current value display. The top window displays the system pressure progression. The axis label is shown to the left side of the display window
Volumetric flow rate	Current compressed air volume delivered by the entire station per time unit
Required pressure	Display of the specified "required pressure"



Monitoring

8 8.6

Element	Meaning
Pressure range limit	Display of the "system pressure" limit
Compressed air consumption	Current value display The top window displays the system pressure progression. The axis label is shown to the right side of the display window
С1 Сх	The bottom window displays the load times of the individual machines
Vertical red line	Cursor for selecting a specific point in time in the time window
Further color codes	See chapter 8.4.8 "colour codes"

Tab. 99 Meaning of the menu Monitoring - Compressed air consumption

- 2. Enter the date and time for the required time window (see Chapter 7.6 "Date and time"). The top and bottom windows display the station data for the selected period of time.
- 3. Display individual measured values by moving the red cursor with the arrow keys.

8.6.2 Specific power

The *Specific power* menu displays an overview of the station providing important data (such as network pressure progression) and the load times of the individual machines. This enables the user to analyze the operating state of the station during a specific period of time in the past.





 Press the Monitoring – Specific power key. The *Monitoring – Specific power* menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
1 hour / 4 secs.	Use \bigcirc to select one of the four provided time intervals. The station data for the selected time period are displayed.



8.6 Monitoring

8

Element	Meaning
<<< / >>>	Moving the time slot forward/backward by larger interval
< / >	Moving the time slot forward/backward by smaller interval
05.03.2015	Input field for the desired date for which you want to display the station da- ta
11:20:00	Input field for the desired time for which you want to display the station da- ta
	In SAM 4.0-16, selection of machines 1–8 or 9–16
Network pressure	Current value display. The top window displays the system pressure progression. The axis label is shown to the left side of the display window
Pressure performance	Display of the calculated pressure quality
Required pressure	Display of the specified "required pressure"
Pressure range limit	Display of the "system pressure" limit
Specific power	Current value display The top window displays the specific output progression. The axis label is shown to the right side of the display window
С1 Сх	The bottom window displays the load times of the individual machines
Vertical red line	Cursor for selecting a specific point in time in the time window

Tab. 100 Meaning of the menu *Monitoring – Specific power*

- 2. Enter the date and time for the required time window (see Chapter 7.6 "Date and time"). The top and bottom windows display the station data for the selected period of time.
- 3. Display individual measured values by moving the red cursor with the arrow keys.

8.6.3 Measurement data

Set a user-defined station overview in the *Measurement data* menu. On up to four pages, you can set and read out analogue and/or digital measured values from the machines.



Monitoring

8 8.6



Fig. 114 Menu: Monitoring – Measurement data – Diagram

- 1. Press the Monitoring Measurement data key.
- Touch the *Diagram* tab.
 The *Measurement data* menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
Diagram	Tab for <i>Diagram</i> sub-menu
Setting analogue	Tab for Setting analogue sub-menu
Setting digital	Tab for Setting digital sub-menu
1 hour / 4 secs.	Use \bigcirc to select one of the several available time intervals. The station data for the selected time period are displayed
<<< / >>>	Moving the time slot forward/backward by larger intervals
< / >	Moving the time slot forward/backward by smaller intervals
05.03.2015	Input field for the desired date for which you want to display the station data
11:20:00	Input field for the desired time for which you want to display the station data
Page 1	Use 📀 to select one the four pages
C1	Analog values are displayed in the top window
D1 D4	Digital values are displayed in the bottom window
Vertical red line	Cursor for selecting a specific point in time in the time window

 Tab. 101
 Meaning of the menu Monitoring – Measurement data – Diagram

3. Use Page 1 ♥ to set the required page.



8.6 Monitoring

8

KAESER Kompressoren	SIGMA AIR MANAGE	R 4.0 8 Autom	natic	101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
	Monitoring Measure	ement data			Status
	Diagram	Setting analogue	Setting digital		Messages
	Analogue element1:				Monitoring
	Value selection	C1/Pressure dew point	Clear	Color	Energy & costs
	Analogue element2:				Maint.
	Value selection	C2/System pressure pNloc	Clear	Color	Control
	Analogue element3:				SAM 4.0 Logic
	Value selection		Clear	Color	Timer control
	Analogue element4:		_		Initial Start-up
	Value selection		Clear	Color	Configuration
16					
08-C26					Contact

Fig. 115 Menu: Monitoring – Measurement data – Setting analogue

Touch the *Setting analogue* or *Setting digital* tab.
 The *Setting analogue* or *Setting digital* menu is displayed.

Set	value	
C1	System pressure air receiver	
C2	System pressure pNloc	
C3	Airend discharge temperature	
C4	Motor temperature	
▼	▼	
Selected value	e: C1/Pressure dew point	
Cancel	Apply	

Fig. 116 Set value menu

5. At *Analogue element 1–4* or *Digital element 1–4* touch the *Value selection* input field. The *Set value* menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
Arrow keys	Move up/down in the list
Left column	List of the machine



Monitoring

8 8.6

Element	Meaning
Right column	List of the values
Selected value	Actual selected machine / selected value
Cancel	Settings not saved
Apply	Settings saved

- Tab. 102 Meaning of the Setting analogue or Setting digital menu elements
 - 6. In the left column, select the desired machine by touching it. Use the arrow keys to scroll through the list.
 - 7. In the right column, select the desired value by touching it. Use the arrow keys to scroll through the list.



You can maximally set two different physical units (pressure and temperature, for example) for analogue value display on a single page.

Row Selected value displays the currently set machine and the currently set value.

8. Press Apply to apply the settings.



Fig. 117 Set color menu

- 9. In row *Color*, touch the colored field. The *Set color* menu is displayed.
- 10. Touch the desired colored field.
- Touch the *Diagram* tab.
 The *Diagram* menu is displayed.
- 12. Enter the *date* and *time* for the required time window (see Chapter 7.6 "Date and time"). The top (analogue values) and bottom (digital values) windows display the station data for the selected period of time.
- 13. Display individual measured values by moving the red cursor with the arrow keys or touching.

08-C2618


8.6.4 Export

Set the measured data report in the *Monitoring – Export* menu. You may save a file with the measured data to an SD card.

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 *Configuration* (see Chapter 7.4 "User Login"). SD card with sufficient memory capacity is present (format: FAT32).

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8 Automatic 101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
	Monitoring Export	Status
	Export format : ADA	Messages
	Start: 10/12/2017 10:00:00 AM	Monitoring
	End: 10/14/2017 12:00:00 AM	Energy & costs
	Temporal resolution: 1s	Maint.
	Start download	Control
	Status: Ready for data export	SAM 4.0 Logic
	SD card can be safely removed.	Timer control
		Initial Start-up
		Configuration
		Contact 1

Fig. 118 Menu Monitoring – Export

- 1. Open the cover of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal (see chapter 6.6 "Installing the control cabinet").
- 2. Push the SD card into the X3 slot until it latches. The bevelled edge of the card must point to the right side towards the terminal (see chapter 7.5"Inserting the SD card").
- 3. Close and latch the cover of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal (see chapter 6.12.6).
- 4. Press the Monitoring Export key.

The *Monitoring – Export* menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
Export format	Selection of the required data format for the file
Start	Start date of the period to be analyzed. Enter the date and time in the corresponding fields
End	End date of the period to be analyzed. Enter the date and time in the corresponding fields
Temporal resolution	Selection of the desired period of time for data recording
Start download	Starts the file saving process to the SD card
Status	Displays whether data backup can be started



Operation

Energy & costs

8.7

Element	Meaning
SD card can be safely removed.	Key with which the SD card is securely logged off from the electronic control (file system info at operating system level) so that is can subsequently be removed without data loss

Tab. 103 Meaning of the Export menu elements

- 5. Enter the required settings.
- 6. Press the Start download key.

You may save a file with the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 measured data to an SD card.

- When you use KAESER CONNECT (see Chapter 8.8 "KAESER CONNECT") to access the export function, the file is downloaded to the Internet-capable device.
- 8. Press SD card can be safely removed. key prior to removing the SD card.

The SD card is securely logged off from the electronic control and can be removed without the risk of data loss.



Depending on the selected interval and the defined temporal resolution, this export may take up to 15 minutes. The approximate export time is displayed on the status line.

8.7 Energy & costs

In the *Energy & costs* menu the energy data from the station collected by SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 are clearly displayed. You can set the energy tariff, enabling you to display the energy data relative to costs.

The Energy & costs menu has the following sub-menus:

- "Table"
- "Diagram"
- "Period comparison"
- "Tariff configuration"
- "Report"

8.7.1 Table

In the *Table* menu the energy consumption and energy costs can be displayed for each individual machine as well as the entire station over a selectable period.

Precondition Tariff costs are configured in the Tariff configuration menu



Operation

8

8.7 Energy & costs

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MA	NAGER 4	1.0 8	A	utomatic		101 p	SI 26 AM
Compressors	Energy & costs Table					Status		
C1 - ASD 35	Start: 08/06/2	Start: 08/06/2017 10:00 AM End: 10/06/2017 12:00 PM Refresh						Messages
C2 - ASD 40		Powe	r consumptio	n / kWh	<u> </u>	Energy cos	ts/€	Monitoring
C3 - ASD 50		On load	Idle	Total	On load	Idle	Total	Energy & costs
C4 - ASD 60	C1	1000	100	1100.0	100	10	110.0	
	C2	2000	200	2200.0	200	20	220.0	Maint.
C5 - BSD 65	C3	3000	300	3300.0	300	30	330.0	4
	C4	4000	400	4400.0	400	40	440.0	Control
C6 - BSD 75	C6	5000	500	5500.0	500	50	550.0	
	C7	6000	600	6600.0	600	60	660.0	SAM 4.0 Logic
C7 - BSD 83	Compressed air gen	erators1000	1100	12100.0	1100	110	1210.0	
	Total	23000	2300	25300.0	15400	1540	16940.0	Timer control
		V	olume:	1046864 cL	ı.ft			Initial Start-up
		Specific	power:	0.02 kV	V/CFM			Configuration
	Co	mpressed air	index:	18.30 \$/	1000cu.ft			Goninguration
							Export	Contact

Fig. 119 Menu Energy & costs - Table

1. Press the Energy & costs – Table key.

The Energy & costs - Table menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
Start	Start date of the period to be analyzed. Enter the date and time in the corresponding fields.
End	End date of the period to be analyzed. Enter the date and time in the corresponding fields.
Refresh	The system updates the calculation and displays the results.
Power consumption / kWh	The energy consumption of the selected machines is displayed individually and as a total.
Energy costs / [cur- rency]	The energy costs of the selected machines are displayed individually and as a total. The values are displayed in the set "unit".
Volume	Volume of the compressed air delivered by all machines. The values are displayed in the set "unit".
Specific power	The required electric power that is required for compressing a volume unit per time unit
Compressed air index	Value calculated from the costs per delivery volume. Used to assess the cost efficiency of the selected machines.
Export	Opens the menu <i>Export</i> in which you can configure and download the report for energy and costs.

Tab. 104 Meaning of the menu elements Energy & costs – Table



Touch to select or deselect the desired machine(s) in the device selection list.
 In the *Table* menu the data is recalculated and the display is updated based on the machine selected.

8.7.2 Energy & Costs Report

In the *Energy & costs – Table – Export* menu the report for energy and costs can be configured. For external analysis, you may save a file in CSV format to an SD card.



When you change the display language (see chapter 7.3 "Language"), the system automatically changes the unit settings and display formats to match the language. Check the settings and correct, if necessary.

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 Configuration (see 7.4 "User Login" section)

SD card with sufficient memory capacity is available (format: FAT32)

- 1. Open the cover of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal (see chapter 6.6 "Installing the control cabinet").
- 2. Push the SD card into the X3 slot until it clicks into place. The bevelled edge of the card must point to the right side towards the terminal (see chapter 7.5 "Inserting the SD card").
- 3. Close and latch the cover of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal (see chapter 6.12.6 "Install Control cabinet").
- Press Energy & costs Table Export.
 The Energy & costs Table Export menu is displayed.

	SIGMA AIR MAN	٩G	ER 4.0 8		Automatic	12.	101 psi		
Compressors	Energy & costs		Table					Status	
C1 - ASD 35	Language	:	en_US English	۲				Messages	
C2 - ASD 40	Date format	:	DD.MM.YYYY	۲				Monitoring	
C3 - ASD 50	Time format	:	HH:MM:SS	۲				Energy & cos	ts
C4 - ASD 60	Decimal separator	:		۲				Maint.	
C5 - BSD 65	Pressure	:	psi	۲				Control	
C6 - BSD 75	Volume	:	CFM	۲				SAM 4.0 Log	lic
C7 - BSD 83	Specific power	:	kW/CFM	۲				Timer contro	
	SD pard insorted		Vaa					Initial Start u	
	SD card distorted		Vos						P
	Status	: 1	Ready for data expo	t				Configuratior	1
08-02626	Back		SD card can be sa	afely r	emoved.	Expo	rt	Contact	i

Fig. 120 Menu: Energy & costs – Table – Export

 Touch to select or deselect the desired machine(s) in the device selection list. In the *Table* menu the data is recalculated and the display is updated based on the machine selected.



8 8.7

6. Set the required parameters.

Element	Meaning
Language	Language settings for the Energy & Costs Report
Date format	Country-specific date format
Time format	Country-specific date format
Decimal separator	Decimal separator format
Pressure	Pressure unit
Volume	Volume unit
Specific power	Specific capacity unit
SD card inserted	An SD card has been physically inserted.
SD card detected	An SD card has been electronically detected.
Status	Status readiness for data export
SD card can be safely removed.	Key with which the SD card is securely logged off from the electronic control (file system info at operating system level) so that it can subsequently be re- moved without data loss
Export	The Energy & Costs Report for all compressors is saved to the SD card. The file format used is ".csv".

Tab. 105 Meaning of the menu elements *Export*

7. Press the Export key.

The Energy & Costs Report is saved to the SD card.

- 8. Accessing the export function via KAESER CONNECT (see 8.8 "KAESER CONNECT" section) the file is downloaded from the internet and saved.
- Press SD card can be safely removed. key prior to removing the SD card. The SD card is securely logged off from the electronic control and can be removed without the risk of data loss.

8.7.3 Diagram

In the *Energy & costs – Diagram* menu the energy consumption and energy costs for the entire stations can be displayed as a pie chart for a selectable period. You may also use external factors in the calculation of overall costs, such as service expenses. You can freely define these expenses in a table and add them as fixed costs.

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 *Configuration* (see 7.4 "User Login" section) Tariff costs are configured in the *Tariff configuration* menu



8 8.7

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8 Automatic 101 psi Energy & costs Diagram Start: 08/06/2016 10:00 AM End: 11/06/2016 10:00 PM Refresh Energy & costs 1.1 On load 1.2 Idle 15400 \$ 15550 \$ Energy costs Service 50.00 \$ 1540 \$ 3 Material 18.00 \$ 15550 \$ Energy costs 4 Bonus 0.00 \$ Misc 1 0.00 \$ Volume: 706 cu.ft 5 Specific power: 0.02 kW/CFM Misc 1 0.00 \$ 6 0.00 \$ Compressed air index: 6.25 \$/1000cu.ft Total costs 15618 \$

Fig. 121 Menu Energy & costs - Diagram

 Press the Energy & costs – Diagram key. The *Energy & costs – Diagram* menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
Start	Start date of the period to be analyzed. Enter the date and time in the corresponding fields.
End	End date of the period to be analyzed. Enter the date and time in the corresponding fields.
Refresh	The system updates the calculation and displays the results.
On load/Idle dia- gram	Pie chart indicating the percentage portions of LOAD and IDLE
Total costs diagram	Pie chart indicating the total costs for the percentage portions of energy costs and freely defined fixed costs
ON LOAD	Energy consumption of all machines in LOAD mode
IDLE	Energy consumption of all machines in IDLE mode
Energy costs	Energy costs of the station. The values are displayed in the currency.
Volume	Volume of the compressed air delivered by all machines. The values are displayed in the set "unit".
Specific power	The required electric power that is required for compressing a volume unit per time unit
Compressed air index	Value calculated from the costs per delivery volume. Used to assess the cost efficiency of the selected machines.
Cost types, item 2– 7.	Freely definable cost types to be taken into account during the calculation of the station total costs.



Operation

.7 Energy & costs

Element	Meaning
Total costs	Total from energy costs and freely definable costs for the entire station.

Tab. 106 Meaning of the menu elements Energy & costs – Diagram

- 2. Enter the required data for the freely definable cost types (item 2–7).
- Result In the *Energy & costs Diagram* menu the diagrams and total costs are recalculated and the displayed updated.

8.7.4 Period comparison

In the *Period comparison* menu the energy consumption of the operating points LOAD RUN and IDLE can be displayed for the entire station as a bar graph for the past six time intervals.

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 *Configuration* (see 7.4 "User Login" section) Tariff costs are configured in the *Tariff configuration* menu



Fig. 122 Menu Energy & costs – Period comparison



Operation

8 8.7

0 11

Energy & costs

1. Press the Energy & costs - Period comparison key.

Depending on the stored data volume, the recalculation and drawing of the bar graph may take up to one minute.

The Energy & costs - Period comparison menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning		
Interval	electing the desired period of time for the bar graph:		
	■ Days (D)		
	■ Weeks (W)		
	■ First half-year		
	Second half-year		
	 Quarters (Q) 		
	Years (Y)		
On load/Idle diagram	Bar graph for the last six intervals for absolute portions of LOAD and IDLE		
ON LOAD	Energy consumption of the entire station in LOAD mode		
IDLE	Energy consumption of the entire station in IDLE mode		
Total	nergy consumption of the entire station		

 Tab. 107
 Meaning of the menu elements
 Energy & costs – Period comparison

- 2. In the line *Interval*, touch the Symbol.
- 3. Enter the desired interval.
- Result In the *Energy & costs Period comparison* menu the energy consumption data and diagrams are displayed for the configured time period.

8.7.5 Tariff configuration

In the Tariff configuration menu settings can be configured for the energy tariff.

The menu has the following sub-menus:

- Tariff costs
- Tariff validity

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 Configuration (see 7.4 "User Login" section)

1. Press the Energy & costs – Tariff configuration key.



8

8.7 Energy & costs

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4	.0 8 Automatic	101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
	Energy & costs Tai	riff configuration		Status
	Tariff costs	Tariff validity		Messages
				Monitoring
		Tariff 1:	/kWh	Energy & costs
		Tariff 2:	/kWh	Maint.
			_	Control
		Currency:		SAM 4.0 Logic
				Initial Start-up
				Configuration
3				
				Contact

Fig. 123 Menu Energy & costs - Tariff configuration

Tap the *Tariff costs* tab,
 The *Energy & costs – Tariff configuration – Tariff costs* menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
Tariff 1	Cost per energy unit of quantity, normal tariff
Tariff 2	Cost per energy unit of quantity, reduced tariff
Currency	National "currency unit"

- Tab. 108
 Meaning of the menu elements Energy & costs Tariff configuration Tariff costs
 - 3. In the Tariff 1 line, configure the costs per energy management unit at the normal tariff.
 - 4. In the *Tariff 2* line, configure the costs per management unit at the reduced tariff.
 - 5. In the *Currency* line, enter the desired currency unit.



8 8.7

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGI	ER 4.0 Auto	omatic	101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
	Energy & costs	Tariff configuration			Status
	Tariff costs	Tariff validity			Messages
	Weekday Monday	Tariff 2 Start 10:00 PM	Tariff 2 End 11:59 PM		Monitoring
	Tuesday	00:00 AM	05:00 AM		Energy & costs
					Maint.
					Control
					SAM 4.0 Logic
0	Delete tariff perio	d d d tori	ff poriod		
08-C258		Add tari			Contact

Fig. 124 Menu: Energy & costs – Tariff configuration – Tariff validity

 Tap the *Tariff validity* tab, The *Energy & costs – Tariff configuration – Tariff validity* menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
Add tariff period	Add the new tariff period.
Weekday	Set the weekday for Tariff 2.
Tariff 2 Start	Set the time for the tariff start.
Tariff 2 End	Set the time for the tariff end.
Delete tariff period	Delete the selected tariff period.

 Tab. 109
 Meaning of the menu elements
 Energy & costs – Tariff configuration – Tariff validity

	Set	the tariff period	k	
Weekday	Start		End	▲ ▲ 5 9
▼				
	Cancel		Арр	ly

Fig. 125 Set the tariff period menu



Touch the Add tariff period button.
 The Set the tariff period menu is displayed

Element	Meaning
Arrow keys	Set value
Weekday	Set weekday
Start	Set the time (hours/minutes) for the tariff start
End	Set the time (hours/minutes) for the tariff end
Cancel	Settings not saved
Apply	Settings saved

- Tab. 110 Meaning of the menu elements Set the tariff period
 - 8. Use the Up and Down arrow keys to set the weekday.
 - 9. Use the Up and Down arrow keys to set the starting and end time.
 - 10. Add the set time period with Apply.
 - Result A time period for Tariff 2 has been added. When calculating the energy costs for this period of time, SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 takes the reduced tariff into account.

8.7.6 Report

In the *Report* menu the email for sending the report Energy & costs can be configured. The report is sent as a ZIP archive and contains the key figures for the compressed air station as well as visual evaluations.

The menu has the following sub-menus:

- Send options
- General settings

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 *Configuration* (see 7.4 "User Login" section)

The parameters of the *X7 Ethernet 1 Gb* interface are correctly configured (see 7.11.4 "X7 Ethernet 1 Gb" section)

The email parameters are correctly configured (see 7.12 "E-mail" section)

1. Press the Energy & costs - Report key.



8 8.7

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAG	GER 2 4 Automa	atic 101 ps 12/11/2016 10:19:26	Configuration AM Access Mode
	Energy & costs	Report		Status
	Send options	General settings		Messages
				Monitoring
		Automatic report sending :	Yes 💟	Energy & costs
		Interval :	Monthly	Maint.
		Recipient e-mail address :		Control
			Send test report	SAM 4.0 Logic
				Timer control
				Initial Start-up
				Configuration
743				Contact
08-C2				

Fig. 126 Menu Report – Send options

2. Tap the *Send options* tab, The *Send options* menu is displayed

Element	Meaning
Automatic report sending	The Yes option is used to activate automatic sending of the report
Interval	 Setting to adjust the frequency with which the report is sent: Daily Weekly Monthly Quarterly Annually
Recipient e-mail address	email address to which the report is sent
Send test report	To check the settings, a test report can be sent locally by email to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0

Tab. 111 Meaning of the menu elements Send options

3. Enter the required settings.



8

8.7 Energy & costs

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAG	ER 2 8	utomatic	101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
	Energy & costs	Report			Status
	Send options	General settings			Messages
		Language :	en_US English	۲	Energy & costs
		Maint.			
	Time format : hh:mm:ss AM/PM				Control
	Decimal separator :				SAM 4.0 Logic
	Pressure : psi 📀				Timer control
		Volume :	CFM	٢	
		Specific power :	kW/CFM	۲	
5-62744					Contact
ő					

Fig. 127 Menu Report – General settings

 Tap the *General settings* tab, The *General settings* menu is displayed

Element	Meaning
Language	Language settings for the Energy & Costs Report
Date format	Country-specific date format
Time format	Country-specific date format
Decimal separator	Decimal separator format
Pressure	Pressure unit
Volume	Volume unit
Specific power	Specific capacity unit

- Tab. 112 Meaning of the menu elements General settings
 - 5. Enter the required settings.
 - 6. Tap the Send options tab,
 - The Send options menu is displayed
 - 7. Press the Send test report key.
 - Result The settings are correct if the recipient has received the test report.



8.8 KAESER CONNECT

The user interface of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 can be displayed on an Internet-enabled device (PC, laptop, tablet). For this purpose, SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 must be connected to the external computer via the X7 Ethernet 1 Gb interface, directly (network cable) or indirectly (network). A web browser is used for the visualization.

ĥ

You cannot remotely adjust any settings via KAESER CONNECT.

For KAESER CONNECT to be able to use the Internet-capable device, it must be registered in the same network as SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.

To be able to use KAESER CONNECT, the browser installed on the Internet-capable device must be able to display HTML5 content. For security reasons, we strongly recommend to use only up-to-date browser versions.

For security reasons access to KAESER CONNECT remotely via the IoT client has been deactivated. This does not affect local access from the customer network.



Fig. 128 KAESER CONNECT

8.8.1 Opening KAESER CONNECT

Precondition The user with password has been created (see chapter 7.4.3 User administration) User name and password are known (see Chapter 7.4 "User log-in") The IP address of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 (see Chapter 7.11 "X7 Ethernet 1 Gb") is known.

1. Connect SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 to the internet device or network using an Ethernet cable.



- 2. In the web browser, enter the IP address of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0. See chapter 7.11.3. The log-in window ① opens.
- 3. Enter the user name 2. See chapter 7.4.3.
- 4. Enter the password 3.
- Click Login 4.
 KAESER CONNECT for SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is displayed.



Operation Contact

- 6. If necessary, set the language; see Chapter 7.3 "Language" (local settings in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 are not affected).
- 7. If necessary, set the units; see Chapter 7.7 "Units" (local settings in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 are not affected).

8.8.2 Closing KAESER CONNECT

➤ To close KAESER CONNECT, click Logout.

8.9 Contact

Press Contact key for displaying contact information about KAESER.

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic	101 psi	Observation ACCESS MODE
	Headquarters KAESER KOMPRESSOREN SE Carl-Kaeser-Straße 26 96450 Coburg Germany Postfach 2143 96410 Coburg Germany Telefon +49 9561 640 0 http://www.kaeser.com/sam4manual/	<u>тотры</u> 12/11/2019 10:19:26 АМ	ACCESS MODE
80			



When you open the *Contact* menu via KAESER CONNECT, a link to our website <u>http://www.kaeser.com/sam4manual/response.asp</u> is displayed. There you will find the latest version of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 operating manual for download as PDF file.



9 Fault Recognition and Rectification

9.1 KAESER SERVICE

The messages valid for SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 are dependent on how the compressor station is equipped.

- 1. Do not attempt fault rectification measures other than those given in this manual!
- 2. Inform KAESER SERVICE if the fault cannot be rectified by the measures suggested.

9.2 Messages

9

9.1

Alarm, service and warning messages are displayed at SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 and stored in the event memory. A pop-up window appearing on top of the current display notifies the user of new messages.

ĥ

 $\frac{\circ}{1}$

Messages must be acknowledged.

Unacknowledg	ed messages present
Faults: 6 Warnings: 4	
Maintenance: 0	
Show now	Remind later

Fig. 131 Message Unacknowledged message(s) present

► Use Show now to call up the *Messages – Unacknowledged* menu.

Element	Meaning
Faults	Number of ignored fault messages
Warnings	Number of ignored warning messages
Maintenance	Number of ignored maintenance messages
Show now	Open the Messages – Unacknowledged menu
Remind later	Postpone display of ignored messages

 Tab. 113
 Meaning of the menu elements Unacknowledged message(s) present

The event memory differentiates between:

- Unacknowledged
- Active
- History (storing the last 1000 messages).

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 Configuration (see chapter 7.4 "User Login")



9.2 Messages

9

KAESER Kompressoren	SIGMA AIR MANA	GER 4.0 8	A	utomatic	101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE
	Messages Una	cknowledged				Status
	Date 12.11.2019 10.15.43 CO1: 7777	Event G	Type Warning	Message number 26000		Messages
	12.11.2019 10:15:40 CO1: YYYY	G	Warning	26080		Monitoring
	12.11.2019 10:15:38 CO1: XXXX	G	Warning	20003		Energy & costs
	12.11.2019 10:15:36 CO1: WWWW	G	Warning	16002		Mataco
	12.11.2019.10115.34 CO1: VVV 12.11.2019.10:13:00		Fault	1790/		
	SNW-65 X3.1: ZZZZ 12.11.2019 10:13:00		Fault	17905		
	F1 - F1: YYYY 12.11.2019 10:13:00	Ð	Fault	17201		SAM 4.0 Logic
	12.11.2019 10:13:00 CO1: WWWW	Э	Fault	16003		Time control
	12.11.2019 10.12:22 SNW-65 X3.2: YYYY	Ð	Diagnosis	70121		Initial Start-up
						Configuration
	Acknowledge message	Acknowledge a	ll visible me	ssages 1 to 9 out of	26	Contact 1

Fig. 132 Menu Messages - Unacknowledged

- 1. Press Messages.
- 2. Select a menu item:
 - Unacknowledged
 - Active
 - History

Symbols for three different event types are shown for the messages:

- ⊖ Message acknowledged
- G Message gone
- The following data is also shown:
 - Date date and time
 - Message number number of the message output by the specific machine
 - Second row: Message text
- The messages types are identified by color:
 - Red: Fault
 - Yellow: Warning, Maint.
 - Blue: Diagnosis, System
 - Black: Operation
- 3. If the message list is longer than one screen page, swipe with your finger up or down or use the arrow keys.
- 4. In the *Messages Unacknowledged* menu, tap an individual message for selection.
- 5. Use Acknowledge message to acknowledge the selected message.
- 6. Use Acknowledge all visible messages to acknowledge all displayed messages that have not yet been acknowledged.



Other faults

9.3 Other faults

Alarm	Possible cause	Remedy	
Operation of the touch screen is difficult and/or returns errors.	The touch screen is dirty.	Wipe the touch screen surfaces with a soft cloth (micro-fibre, for example) with- out any harsh cleaning agent.	
	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is not correctly grounded. The capacitive touch screen must be earthed to work properly.	Ground the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 properly (see chapter 6.12.2).	
#### is displayed in- stead of a value.	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 was unable to determine the value.	Check the electrical connection and the sensor.	
The compressed air station cannot be	Error in the "Engineering Base" configuration.	Make correction in "Engineering Base".	
switched to Automatic mode.	The <i>Network pressure</i> meas- ured value is not available.	Check the electrical connection and the pressure transducer.	
The keys on the operat- ing panel are flashing.	An internal software error has occurred	Switch off the power supply for SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 at the user's power supply disconnecting device, wait 10 sec- onds and switch on again.	
		If the error occurs again, call KAESER SERVICE.	

Tab. 114 Other faults

10 Maintenance



10.1 Maintenance tasks on electrical equipment

10 Maintenance

0

10.1 Maintenance tasks on electrical equipment

Maintenance tasks on electrical equipment may only be carried out by the following persons:

- Qualified personnel, see chapter 3 "Assigning personnel".
- Technicians qualified to maintain SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 and service personnel instructed by and under the supervision of such a qualified technician
- KAESER SERVICE
- 1. Check personnel for specialized qualifications.
- 2. Assign suitable personnel to maintenance tasks.
- 3. Instruct on correct maintenance procedures in accordance with the operating manual.
- 4. Document maintenance tasks carried out.

Enter completed maintenance tasks in the corresponding lists in the operating manual.

10.2 Menu "Maintenance"

Maintenance-relevant information about the connected machines/components can be viewed in the *Maintenance* menu, where settings can also be made.

The *Maintenance* menu has the following sub-menus:

- Overview"
- "History"
- "Report"
- "Maintenance management"
- Check the displayed data and adjust the settings as required.

10.2.1 Menu "Maintenance – Overview"

View maintenance information for the entire station or for individual machines/components in the *Overview* menu.

1. Press the Maintenance – Overview key.

The Maintenance - Overview menu for the entire station is displayed.

Element	Meaning
	This symbol means that there is still sufficient runtime remaining until the next scheduled maintenance measure
•	This symbol means that there is only a little runtime remaining until the next scheduled maintenance measure
6	This symbol means that the time until the scheduled maintenance measure has already been exceeded
C1 – ASD 35	Compressor number and type (example)



10 Maintenance

10.2 Menu "Maintenance"

Element	Meaning
Oil filter	Components to be maintained
in XXXXh YYYYh	XXXX (black, positive numerical values): Time until next maintenance task XXXX (red, negative numerical values): Amount by which the time until the scheduled maintenance task has already been exceeded YYYY (grey numerical values): Interval between two maintenance tasks
Bar chart	Graphical display of maintenance times: Green bar: sufficient runtime remains until the next scheduled maintenance task Yellow bar: only a little time remains until the next scheduled maintenance task or the time has just been exceeded Red bar: the time until the scheduled maintenance measure has been excee- ded
Estimated due date for next service measure:	Calculated date when the next maintenance measure is estimated to be carried out
Туре	Status display for the selected machine

Tab. 115 Meaning of the menu elements in menu Maintenance - Overview

	SIGMA AIR MA	NAGER 4.0	4	utomatic	: 101 psi	Observation Access Mode
Station	Maintenance	Overview				Status
Compressors	 C1 - ASD 35 : C2 - ASD 50 : 	Oil filter	in -45	<mark>0h</mark> 6000h		Messages
C1 - ASD 35	C3 - BSD 65 :	Oil filter	in 256	3h 2563h 5h 2045h		Monitoring
C2 - ASD 50	V4 - B3D 73 .	On men	111 794	311 794011		Energy & costs
C3 - BSD 65						Maint.
C4 - BSD 75						Control
► Dryer						SAM 4.0 Logic
► Filter						Timer control
Air receiver						Initial Start-up
Control valves						Configuration
						Contact <u>1</u>
10-C3580						

Fig. 133 Menu *Maintenance – Overview for the entire station*

Select the desired machine in the device selection bar.
 The menu *Maintenance – Overview* for the selected machine is displayed.



KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER	4.0 4	Automatic	6.97 bar	Observation Access Mode
Station	Maintenance Overv	iew			Status
Compressors	Oil filter	in	-450h 6000h		Messages
	🤣 Air filter	in	-150h 6000h	• •	
C1 - ASD 35	Oil separator	in	33h 6000h ◀		Monitoring
	🕗 Coupling	in	66h 3000h ◀		
C2 - ASD 50	Oil change	in	112h 6000h ◀		Energy & costs
	Electrical system	in	277h 4000h ◀		
C3 - BSD 65	Lubrication	in	527h 2000h <		Maint.
	Valves	in	2500h 12000h ◀		
C4 - BSD 75	Motor bearings	in	2527h 36000h ◀		Control
► Dryer	Estimated due date for next serv	vice measure:	12.06.2019		SAM 4.0 Logic
► Filter					Timer control
Air receiver					Initial Start-up
Control valves					Configuration
10-C3581					Contact İ

Fig. 134 Menu Maintenance – Overview – for the selected machine

3. Check the displayed remaining runtime and schedule the next maintenance measure.

10.2.2 Menu "Maintenance - History"

View maintenance-relevant messages for the entire station or for individual machines/components in the *History* menu.

The *History* menu has the following sub-menus:

- "Current"
- "Compressor"
- "System"
- "Diagnosis"
- 1. Press the Maintenance History key.

The *Maintenance – History* menu for the entire station is displayed.

2. Select the desired machine in the device selection bar.

The menu *Maintenance – History – Current* for the selected machine is displayed.

Element	Meaning
Current	This menu displays all messages in chronological order. The last message is shown at the top.
Compressor	This menu displays all fault messages and warnings in chronological order. The last message is shown at the top.
System	This menu displays all system messages in chronological order. The last message is shown at the top.
Diagnosis	This menu displays all diagnostic messages in chronological order. The last mes- sage is shown at the top.



10 Maintenance

10.2 Menu "Maintenance"

Element	Meaning
#	This column shows the message number.
Туре	Type of message.
Event	Display of the event type of the message.
Э	Event type: Message coming
G	Event type: Message going
⊖	Event type: Message acknowledged
Date	Date and time of the message.
Message	Message text

Tab. 116 Meaning of the menu elements in menu Maintenance - History

	SIGMA	Observation ACCESS MODE					
Station	Mainter	Status					
Compressors		Current	Corr	pressor	System	Diagnosis	Messages
C1 - ASD 35	#	Туре	Event	Date	Messa	ge	Monitoring
C2 - ASD 50	20	Fault	Э	13.05.19 13:48:21	Oil level side B		Energy & costs
C3 - BSD 65	12	Warning	Э	13.05.19 13:45:51	Filter blocked		Mntnce
C4 - BSD 75	874	Fault	Э	13:45:11	All 1.01 - open ci	ircuit	Control
							SAM 4.0 Logic
							Time control
							Initial Start-up
							Configuration
10-C3582							Contact

Fig. 135 Menu Maintenance - History - Current for the selected machine

Select the Compressor tab.
 The menu *Maintenance – History – Current* for the selected machine is displayed.



rvation CCESS MODE	Observ	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi							CAESER OMPRESSOREN	KO
	Status	Maintenance History								
5	Messages	Diagnosis	System	or	Cor		Current		Compressors	•
g	Monitoring		Message	Date	vent	E	Туре	#	C1 - ASD 35	
costs	Energy & co		Oil level side B	19 1:48:21 PM	€	÷	Fault	20	ASD 50	C2 -
	Mntnce		Oil reflow started	19 1:45:51 PM	€ Э	÷	Operation	12	BSD 65	С3 -
	Control		Filler blocked	19 1.45.51 PW	9		warning	12	- BSD 75	C4 -
Logic	SAM 4.0 Lc									
trol	Time contro									
rt-up	Initial Start-									
ition	Configuratio									
i	Contact									
g cc Lc trc	Monitoring Energy & cc Mntnce Control SAM 4.0 Lc Time control Initial Start- Configuratio Configuratio		Message Oil level side B Oil reflow started Filter blocked	Date 19 1:48:21 PM 19 1:45:51 PM 19 1:45:51 PM	vent € €	Ę	Type Fault Operation Warning	# 20 12 12	C1 - ASD 35 ASD 50 BSD 65 BSD 75	C2 - C3 - C4 -

Fig. 136 Menu Maintenance - History - Compressor for the selected machine

- 4. Select the System tab.
 - The menu Maintenance History System for the selected machine is displayed.

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 4 Automatic 101 psi									
Station	Mainte	Maintenance History								
Compressors		Current	Comp	ressor	System		Diagnosis	Messages		
C1 - ASD 35	#	Туре	Event	Date		Message		Monitoring		
C2 - ASD 50								Energy & costs		
C3 - BSD 65								Mntnce		
C4 - BSD 75								Control		
								SAM 4.0 Logic		
								Time control		
								Initial Start-up		
								Configuration		
								Contact 1		
10-C3584										

Fig. 137 Menu Maintenance - History - System for the selected machine

5. Select the Diagnosis tab.

The menu Maintenance - History - Diagnosis for the selected machine is displayed.



KAESER Kompressoren	SIGMA	AIR MANAG	GER 4.0	4 Aut	omatic	101 psi	Observation ACCESS MODE			
Station	Mainte	Maintenance History								
Compressors		Current	Co	ompressor	System	Diagnosis	Messages			
C1 - ASD 35	#	Туре	Event	Date	Mes	sage	Monitoring			
C2 - ASD 50	874	Diagnose	Э	05/13/19 1:48:21 PM	All 1.01 - Oper	n circuit	Energy & costs			
C3 - BSD 65							Mntnce			
C4 - BSD 75							Control			
							SAM 4.0 Logic			
							Time control			
							Initial Start-up			
							Configuration			
							Contact <u>1</u>			
10-C3585										

Fig. 138 Menu Maintenance – History – Diagnosis for the selected machine

6. Check the displayed messages.

10.2.3 Menu "Report"

Set e-mail sending for messages in the *Report* menu.

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 *Configuration* (see 7.4 "User Login" section) The parameters of the *X7 Ethernet 1 Gb* interface are correctly configured (see chapter 7.11.4 "X7 Ethernet 1 Gb")

The e-mail parameters are correctly configured (see chapter 7.12 "E-mail")



KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MANAC	GER 4.0 8 Automatic	101 psi	Operation ACCESS MODE				
Station	Maintenance Report s							
	E-mail	surveilance@factory.com	Active	Messages				
	Warning treshold	150	h	Monitoring				
				Energy & costs				
				Mntnce				
				Time control				
				Initial Start-up				
				Configuration				
10-03586				Contact İ				

Fig. 139

1. Press the Maintenance - Report key.

The *Maintenance – Report* menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning
E-mail	The e-mail address to which the messages are sent.
Warning threshold	In here, set the number of hours as of which messages are sent prior to the maintenance deadline expiring.
Active	E-mail sending is activated if the Active checkbox is ticked off

- Tab. 117 Meaning of the menu elements in menu Report Overview
 - 2. Enter the required settings.

10.2.4 Menu "Maintenance management"

Compressors can be assigned to maintenance groups in the *Maintenance management* menu. This allows you to carry out maintenance measures that are due on several machines at the same time.

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 *Configuration* (see 7.4 "User Login" section) The parameters of the *X7 Ethernet 1 Gb* interface are correctly configured (see chapter 7.11.4 "X7 Ethernet 1 Gb") The amail parameters are correctly configured (see chapter 7.12 "E mail")

The email parameters are correctly configured (see chapter 7.12 "E-mail")



10.3 Software update

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN	SIGMA AIR MA	NAGER 4.0 16 Automatic	Configuration Access Mode
	Maintenance	Maintenance management	Status
	Compressors		Messages
	Groups	Compressors	Monitoring
	None 1	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16	Maint.
		Relative runtime offset: 12 h	Control
	2	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 Relative runtime offset: 12 h	SAM 4.0 Logic
	3	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 Relative runtime offset: 1 h	Timer control
	4	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 Polativo suntimo offect:	Configuration
10-03587			Contact 1

Fig. 140

1. Press the Maintenance – Maintenance management key.

The *Maintenance – Maintenance management* menu is displayed.

Element	Meaning	
Groups	Maintenance group selection	
Compressors	Assigning compressors to a maintenance group	
None	The machines are not assigned to a maintenance group	
1 – 4	Maintenance group 1 to 4	
Relative runtime offset:	Runtime offset for the compressors within a maintenance group. The num- ber of hours determines the permitted difference of compressor runtimes be- tween the machines that are used the most and those used the least.	

 Tab. 118
 Meaning of the menu elements in menu Maintenance – Maintenance management

2. Assign the corresponding compressors to a maintenance group by tapping the machine number.

The machine numbers of the compressors that have been assigned to the maintenance groups are shown in green boxes. The numbers of compressors that have not been assigned remain in row *None*.

3. Enter the number of permitted hours for the runtime offset in fields *Relative runtime offset:*.

10.3 Software update

You require an SD to card to update SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.



10.3 Software update

For the software update, you must temporarily switch off the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 power supply. If compressed air is generated (the «Compressed air generation» key at SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 illuminates in green), the machines will switch to internal controller regulation when the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 power supply is switched off. The compressed air station runs in "Manual" mode. The machines are under the control of their own internal controllers. Because of the internal cascaded pressure regulation settings on the compressors, the system pressure will swing much further in manual mode than in automatic mode with SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.

Precondition An SD card with the update file required to update SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is available. The compressed air station is known.

- Perform the update only when the compressed air supply is not at risk due to manual operation.
- > Perform the following actions in the sequence described below:

10.3.1 Switching on manual operation

- 1. Ensure that SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is set to *Manual* mode. The «Automatic» @ key does not illuminate.
- 2. If the «Automatic» @ key illuminates green, press this key.

The *Manual* mode can cause large pressure swings in the compressed air system.

Stations with machines without system pressure switch will deliver no compressed air in the *Manual* mode or if the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 fails.

The system returns a confirmation prompt.

3. Confirm prompt with the Yes key.

The «Automatic» @ key no longer illuminates in green.

The machines are under the control of their own internal controllers.

10.3.2 Insert the SD card.

0][

1. Open the cover of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal (see Chapter 6.6).



10.3 Software update



- 2 SD card
- Bevelled SD card edge
- 2. Push the SD card 2 into the X3 slot 1 until it latches. The bevelled edge 3 of the card must point to the right side towards the terminal.
- 3. Close and latch the cover of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal (see Chapter 6.12).

10.3.3 Importing the update file

Precondition Login with Access Level 2 Configuration (see 7.4 "User Login" chapter)

	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 8	Manual	101 psi	Configuration Access Mode
	Initial Start-up Software upo	date		Status
	SD card inserted SD card detected SD card correctly formatted Update file available Current software version New software version	Yes Yes Yes 1.8.10, 2017-07-07_06:00:00 PM 1.9.4, 2017-07-31_06:00:00 PM		Messages Monitoring Energy & costs Maint.
	Update	e to new software version Format SD card		Control SAM 4.0 Logic Timer control
10-02561				Initial Start-up Configuration Contact





2

10.3 Software update

1. Press the Initial Start-up – Software update key

The Software update menu displays the status as follows:

- SD card inserted: An SD card has been physically inserted
- SD card detected. An SD card has been electronically detected
- SD card correctly formatted: The file system of the SD card is compatible (FAT32)
- Update file available: A valid update file is detected
- Current software version: Version data of the software currently installed on SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0
- New software version: Version data of the update file on the SD card
- When all conditions for an update are met, press Software update.
 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 restarts, imports the update file and automatically executes the update. During the update messages in English are displayed reporting the update progress.

The SD cards formatting is incorrect (FAT32).

- Use the function: Format SD card to correctly reformat the SD card.
- The read-only protection of the SD card must not in "lock" position.
- Copy the valid update file to the SD card and repeat the update process as described under "Inserting the SD card".
- 3. **NOTICE** Controller damage due to power failure
 - > Do not interrupt the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 power supply during the update process!
- The update takes a few minutes. When the update has completed, the Update successful message is displayed.
- 5. Switch off the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 power supply (miniature circuit breaker in the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 control cabinet or the user's power supply disconnecting device).
- 6. Remove the SD card 2.
- 7. Switch on the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 power supply (miniature circuit breaker in the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 control cabinet or the user's power supply disconnecting device).
- Result SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 starts with the new software.
 - Document the software version in the "Software versions" table in the annex (see chapter 13.3.2).
 - Download the desired operating manual from our server (see chapter 1.6).

10.3.4 Activating automatic mode

- Press the «Automatic» @ key. The system returns a confirmation prompt.
- Confirm prompt with the Yes key.
 The «Automatic» ekey lights up green.
 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 assumes control of the compressed air station.



10

10.4 Changing the additional buffer battery

10.4 Changing the additional buffer battery

SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 features a permanently installed buffer battery. In the event of a failure, you can install a second buffer battery. This additional buffer battery is switched in parallel to the factory-installed battery and assumes its function. The functionality of this second battery is not impaired by the discharged factory-installed battery.

► Comply with the following instructions.

10.4.1 Danger from batteries

WARNING

There is danger of acid burns if batteries are overheated or damaged.

- > Store the battery in a cool and dry place.
- Properly dispose of discharged buffer batteries.

10.4.2 Buffer battery life

Under normal operating conditions, the buffer battery in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 has a life of at least 10 years.

NOTICE

Data loss from discharged buffer battery

- Heed warning messages from SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 concerning the buffer battery charge level.
- ► Install the additional buffer battery only when SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is switched on.



In the event of a voltage loss and discharged buffer battery, the internal clock is reset to the date 01.01.1970 after power has returned.

Notice the maximum storage times for unused buffer batteries.

10.4

KAESER KOMPRESSOREN

10.4.3 Installing the additional buffer battery

Changing the additional buffer battery



- Fig. 143 Buffer battery location
 - (1) "X2 Battery": Slot for additional buffer battery
 - 2 Buffer battery
- Precondition You have a new buffer battery at hand (for part number and type, please see chapter 11). The SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is switched on.
 - 1. Open the cover of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal (see Chapter 6.6).
 - 2. Use a slot-head screwdriver to break off the plastic cover ("Battery X2") at the rear of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal.
 - 3. Insert the buffer battery 2 into the slot 1. The positive pole of the buffer battery points away from the terminal rear (see illustration).
 - 4. Insert the buffer battery 2 into the slot 1 until you feel resistance.
 - 5. Check and correct, if required, the time zone, date and time (see chapter 7.6).
 - 6. Record the installation date of the buffer battery in the maintenance table in the annex of this operating manual (chapter 13.6).



Discharged batteries are hazardous waste.

 Dispose of discharged batteries according to national regulations and directives. See chapter 12.2.



11.1 Note the nameplate

11 Spares, Operating Materials, Service

11.1 Note the nameplate

The nameplate contains all information to identify your controller. This information is essential to us in order to provide you with optimal service.

 Please give the information from the nameplate with every inquiry and when ordering spare parts. See Chapter 2.1 System information for the required data.

11.2 Replacement parts for service and repair

If required, you can purchase an additional buffer battery (see Chapter 10.4) from a retail store:

Designation	Voltage [V]	Capacity [Ah]	Туре
Lithium buffer battery	3.0	0.19	CR2032/BR2032

Tab. 119 Replacement buffer battery

Use these parts lists to plan your material requirement according to operating conditions and to order the required spare parts.



- Make sure that any inspection, service (preventive maintenance), and repair not described in this manual are carried out by an authorized KAESER service representative.



11 Spares, Operating Materials, Service

11.2 Replacement parts for service and repair



SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 \geq sam4.0_1.12.X



11.2 Replacement parts for service and repair

	Legend	KOMPRESSOR
	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0	SEL-4277_01 E
		i
Item	Description	Option
3028	Communication Modul	
3030	Control SAM	
3037	Input Output Module	
3048	Control label	
3108	Ethernet Switch	
3109	Ethernet Patchkabel	
3110	Ethernet Patchkabel	
3111	Ethernet Switch	
3118	Ethernet Patchkabel	
3119	Ethernet Patchkabel	
3302	End clamp	
3351	Coupling relays	
3359	End plate	
3369	Protect switch	
3406	Plug-in jumpers	
3468	End plate	
3469	End plate	
3481	Connecting plug	
3489	Right-angle plug	
3500	Pressure transducer	
3502	Pressure transducer	
3612	Converter	
3677	Duo-Bushing clamp	
3685	Ground terminal	
3692	Duo-Bushing clamp	
4660	Fan guard	
1935	Control cabinet fan	
5455	Protection sleeve	
5456	Protection sleeve	
6468	Sealing ring	
3085	Body control cabinet	
3089	Control cabinet key	
3242	Support	
3610	Edge protecting strip	
3729	Locking plate	
3797	Twist fastener	
3828	Hinae	
	······································	

Please quote the part number and serial number of the machine together with the item number and the description of the part when ordering.

Before and during all work, be sure to read and follow the safety and service instructions in the machine's service manual!



11 Spares, Operating Materials, Service

11.2 Replacement parts for service and repair



SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 ≥ sam4.0_1.12.X



11.2 Replacement parts for service and repair

	Legend	KOMPRESSO
	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0	SEL-4278_01
Item	Description	Option
3028	Communication Modul	
3030	Control SAM	
3037	Input Output Module	
3048	Control label	
3108	Ethernet Switch	***************************************
3109	Ethernet Patchkabel	
3110	Ethernet Patchkabel	
3111	Ethernet Switch	
3119	Ethernet Patchkabel	
3302	End clamp	
3351	Coupling relays	
3359	End plate	
3369	Protect switch	
3406	Plug-in jumpers	
3468	End plate	
3469	End plate	***************************************
3481	Connecting plug	
3489	Right-angle plug	
3500	Pressure transducer	
3502	Pressure transducer	
3677	Duo-Bushing clamp	
3685	Ground terminal	
3692	Duo-Bushing clamp	
4660	Fan guard	
4935	Control cabinet fan	
5455	Protection sleeve	
5456	Protection sleeve	
6468	Sealing ring	
8085	Body control cabinet	
8089	Control cabinet key	
8242	Support	
8610	Edge protecting strip	
8729	Locking plate	
8797	Twist fastener	
8828	Hinge	

Please quote the part number and serial number of the machine together with the item number and the description of the part when ordering.

Before and during all work, be sure to read and follow the safety and service instructions in the machine's service manual!


User Manual SIGMA AIR MANAGEMENT SYSTEM SIGMA AIR MANAGER $4.0 \ge \text{sam}4.0_1.12.X$



11.2 Replacement parts for service and repair

	Legend	KOMPRESSOR
	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0	SEL-4279_01 E
		I
Item	Description	Option
3028	Communication Modul	
3030	Control SAM	
3037	Input Output Module	
3048	Control label	
3108	Ethernet Switch	
3109	Ethernet Patchkabel	
3110	Ethernet Patchkabel	
3111	Ethernet Switch	
3118	Ethernet Patchkabel	
3119	Ethernet Patchkabel	
3302	End clamp	
3338	Current supply	
3351	Coupling relays	
3359	End plate	
3369	Protect switch	
3406	Plug-in jumpers	
3468	End plate	
3469	End plate	
3481	Connecting plug	
3489	Right-angle plug	
3500	Pressure transducer	
3502	Pressure transducer	
3612	Converter	
3677	Duo-Bushing clamp	
3685	Ground terminal	
3692	Duo-Bushing clamp	
4660	Fan guard	
4935	Control cabinet fan	
5455	Protection sleeve	
5456	Protection sleeve	
5468	Sealing ring	
3085	Body control cabinet	
8089	Control cabinet key	
8242	Support	
<u>-</u> 3610	Edge protecting strip	
8729	Locking plate	
8797	Twist fastener	

Please quote the part number and serial number of the machine together with the item number and the description of the part when ordering.

Before and during all work, be sure to read and follow the safety and service instructions in the machine's service manual!



User Manual SIGMA AIR MANAGEMENT SYSTEM SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 ≥ sam4.0_1.12.X



11.2 Replacement parts for service and repair

	Legend	KOMPRESSO
	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0	SEL-4280_01
		I
ltem	Description	Option
3028	Communication Modul	
3030	Control SAM	
3037	Input Output Module	
3048	Control label	
3108	Ethernet Switch	
3109	Ethernet Patchkabel	
3110	Ethernet Patchkabel	
3111	Ethernet Switch	
3119	Ethernet Patchkabel	
3302	End clamp	
3338	Current supply	
3351	Coupling relays	
3359	End plate	
3369	Protect switch	
3406	Plug-in jumpers	
3468	End plate	
3469	End plate	
3481	Connecting plug	
3489	Right-angle plug	
3500	Pressure transducer	
3502	Pressure transducer	
3677	Duo-Bushing clamp	
3685	Ground terminal	
3692	Duo-Bushing clamp	
4660	Fan quard	
4935	Control cabinet fan	
5455	Protection sleeve	
5456	Protection sleeve	
3468	Sealing ring	
3085	Body control cabinet	
8089	Control cabinet key	
3242	Support	
 3610	Edge protecting strip	
8729	Locking plate	
3797	Twist fastener	
2000	Hinge	

Please quote the part number and serial number of the machine together with the item number and the description of the part when ordering.

Before and during all work, be sure to read and follow the safety and service instructions in the machine's service manual!



11 Spares, Operating Materials, Service

11.2 Replacement parts for service and repair





User Manual SIGMA AIR MANAGEMENT SYSTEM SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 ≥ sam4.0_1.12.X



11.2 Replacement parts for service and repair

tem	Description	Option
8112	Bus controller	
8113	Supply module	
3114	Input module DI	
8115	Input module DO	
8116	Input module AI	
8117	Potential distribution	
8120	Lower part bus controller	
8121	Lower part IO-module	
8676	Terminal box	



11 Spares, Operating Materials, Service

11.2 Replacement parts for service and repair



8140

Sub

rice-Kit) (Option)

ŝ



11.2 Replacement parts for service and repair

8085	Body control cabinet	SEL-4086_0
ltem	Description	Option
3780	Electro-consumables	
6526	Plug-in connection plug	
6527	Plug-in connection ball	
8140	Enclosure	
8228	Rear cover	
8694	Cover, lower	
9718	Contact washer	
Please qu	ote the part number and serial number of the machine together with the item n	umber and the description of the
part wher	ordering.	



11.3 KAESER AIR SERVICE

KAESER AIR SERVICE offers:

- authorized KAESER service representatives with KAESER factory training,
- increased operational reliability ensured by preventive maintenance,
- energy savings achieved by avoidance of pressure losses,
- optimum conditions for operation of the compressed air system,
- the security of genuine KAESER spare parts,
- increased legal certainty as all regulations are kept to.
- ➤ Why not sign a KAESER AIR SERVICE maintenance agreement!

Result Your advantage: lower costs and higher compressed air availability.

11.4 Displaying the software version

You can display the software version used in SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 (see Chapter 7.11).

Press the Configuration – SAM 4.0 terminal key.
 Select the Serial data menu.

Section *Software* displays the software version and date.



12.1 De-commissioning

12 Decommissioning, Storage and Transport

12.1 De-commissioning

De-commissioning is necessary, for example, under the following circumstances:

- SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is temporarily not needed.
- SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is to be moved to another location.
- 1. Isolate SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 (power supply disconnecting device) from all power phases .
- 2. Switch off external power sources.
- 3. Disconnect SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 from all connections when the device is to be moved to another location.

12.2 Disposal

Material T9 Torx screwdriver

Precondition SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is de-commissioned.



Fig. 144 Buffer battery positions

- (1) Permanently installed buffer battery
- 2 Additional buffer battery
- 1. Disconnect SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 from all connections.
- 2. Open the control cabinet of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 cover (see chapter 6.6).
- 3. Detach all connections from the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal.
- 4. Use a suitable tool to force the removal of incommoding cover parts.
- 5. Use a Torx screwdriver to remove the T9 screws at the rear housing panel of the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal.
- 6. Remove the housing panel.
- 7. Use a suitable tool to remove the permanently installed and any additional buffer battery.



12.2 Disposal

- 8. Dispose of buffer batteries in a responsible manner (see chapter "Environmentally-friendly battery disposal").
- 9. Deliver the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 to an authorized disposal expert.

12.2.1 Battery disposal

Batteries contain substances that are harmful to living beings and the environment. For this reason, batteries must not be disposed of with unsorted residential waste. They must be disposed of in accordance with local environmental regulations. This procedure facilitates the handling and recycling of batteries.





- 1 Do not dispose of batteries with residential waste
- 2 Battery contains lead (if applicable)
- > Dispose of batteries in accordance with local environmental regulations.



13 Annex

13.1 Dimensional drawing

See Chapter 6.6 for instructions about the attachment of the control cabinet.





13.2 Equipment and options

Enter the current technical equipment, built-in options, retrofits and other technical modifications for this device in the below table.

Designation	This device	Remark
Туре	□ SAM 4.0-4	
	□ SAM 4.0-8	
	□ SAM 4.0-16	
Options		
E1:PROFIBUS master		
E9: Network Section Control		
E10: Ports RJ45: SIGMA NETWORK		
E12: Ports RJ45/FOC: SIGMA NETWORK		
E19: Single-mode FOC		
C41:PROFIBUS DP		
C42: Modbus RTU		
C44: Modbus TCP		
C45: PROFINET IO		
C50: EtherNet/IP		
Retrofits		

Tab. 120 Equipment and options

13.3 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 setting values

After commissioning and changes to the configuration or settings, please document the following information:

- Name of the "Engineering Base" configuration file
- Any setting modifications at the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal
- > Enter the information in the prepared lists.
- Result The documentation of configuration and settings simplify the task of external Service Technicians in particular, when providing service on your equipment.



13.3.1 Notes

· · ·		
Notes		



Notes		

Tab. 121 Notes for changes/settings

13.3.2 Software versions

See Chapter 10.3 for instructions about software updating. See Chapter 11.4 for displaying the software version.

Software version	Date and time	Name 1)	Notes
¹⁾ Person having carried out the sof	tware update.		

T erson having carried out the sortwa

Tab. 122 Software versions



13.3.3 "Engineering Base" configuration

See Chapter 7.5 for instructions about the "Engineering Base" configuration.

"Engineering Base" configuration file	Date and time	Name 1)	Remark
¹⁾ Person performing the "Engineering Base" configu	uration.		

Tab. 123 "Engineering Base" configuration

13.3.4 Time and date

See Chapter 7.6 for instructions about setting the date and time.

Date	Time	Time zone	Automatic updating of times?	Time server address	Name
		a: United States			

¹⁾ Default setting: *United States*

Tab. 124 Time and date



13.3.5 Settings for the X7 Ethernet interface

X7 Ethernet 1 Gb	Setting	Name
Active		
DHCP		
IP address		
Net mask		
Gateway		
Name server		

Tab. 125 Settings for the X7 Ethernet interface

13.3.6 Pressure regulation settings

13.3.6.1 Pressure parameters

See instructions in chapter 7.16

Date/time				
Name	Unit	Factory setting		
Required pressure	[psig]	100		
Pressure low pt	[psig]	0.00		
Pressure low dpt	[psig]	4		
Pressure low tpt	[s]	10		
Pressure low dpt active		_		

Tab. 126 Pressure parameters

13.3.6.2 System parameters

See instructions in chapter 7.16

Date/time				
Name	Unit	Factory set- ting		
Restart				
Automatic restart		+		
Delay period for restart	[s]	60		
Minimum pressure with air system OFF		Active –		
Further settings		'		
Monitoring period for mo- tor running	[S]	60		
Power limiting	[hp]	670		
Power limiting active		_		
+ \doteq Yes, $- \doteq$ No				



Date/time				
Name	Unit	Factory set- ting		
Back pressure	[psig]	0.00		
+ ≙ Yes, – ≙ No				

Tab. 127 System parameters

13.3.7 Operating hours and maintenance intervals

Date/time								
Name		Factory setting						
Machine 1	lachine 1							
Source		SC						
Total hours	[h]	0						
Hours on load	[h]	0						
Preset (maintenance in- terval)	[h]	500						
Remaining (maintenance interval)	[h]	500						
Active	(y/n)	-						
Machine 2								
Source		SC						
Total hours	[h]	0						
Hours on load	[h]	0						
Preset (maintenance in- terval)	[h]	500						
Remaining (maintenance interval)	[h]	500						
Active	(y/n)	_						
Machine 3								
Source		SC						
Total hours	[h]	0						
Hours on load	[h]	0						
Preset (maintenance in- terval)	[h]	500						
Remaining (maintenance interval)	[h]	500						
Active	(y/n)	-						
Machine 4								
Source		SC						
Total hours	[h]	0						



Date/time					
Name		Factory setting			
Hours on load	[h]	0			
Preset (maintenance in- terval)	[h]	500			
Remaining (maintenance interval)	[h]	500			
Active	(y/n)	_			
Machine 5			 		
Source		SC			
Total hours	[h]	0			
Hours on load	[h]	0			
Preset (maintenance in- terval)	[h]	500			
Remaining (maintenance interval)	[h]	500			
Active	(y/n)	_			
Machine 6					
Source		SC			
Total hours	[h]	0			
Hours on load	[h]	0			
Preset (maintenance in- terval)	[h]	500			
Remaining (maintenance interval)	[h]	500			
Active	(y/n)	_			
Machine 7					
Source		SC			
Total hours	[h]	0			
Hours on load	[h]	0			
Preset (maintenance in- terval)	[h]	500			
Remaining (maintenance interval)	[h]	500			
Active	(y/n)	_			
Machine 8					
Source		SC			
Total hours	[h]	0			
Hours on load	[h]	0			
Preset (maintenance in- terval)	[h]	500			



NameFactory settingImage: settingRemaining (maintenance interval)[h]500Image: settingActive(y/n)-Image: settingImage: settingActive(y/n)-Image: settingImage: settingMachine 9SCImage: settingImage: settingImage: settingTotal hours[h]0Image: settingImage: settingHours on load[h]0Image: settingImage: settingPreset (maintenance in- interval)[h]500Image: settingImage: settingActive(y/n)-Image: settingImage: settingImage: settingActive(y/n)-Image: settingImage: settingImage: settingSourceImage: settingSCImage: settingImage: settingImage: settingActive(y/n)0Image: settingImage: settingImage: settingPreset (maintenance in- terval)[h]500Image: settingImage: settingActive(y/n)-Image: settingImage: settingImage: settingActive(y/n)-Image: settingImage: settingImage: settingActive(y/n)-Image: settingImage: settingImage: settingActive(y/n)-Image: settingImage: settingImage: settingActive(y/n)Image: settingImage: settingImage: settingImage: settingActive(y/n)Image: setti	Date/time						
Remaining (maintenance interval)[h]500IIActive(y/n)0IIMachine 9SourceSCIIITotal hours[h]0IIHours on load[h]0IIIPreset (maintenance in- terval)[h]500IIIRemaining (maintenance interval)[h]500IIIActive(y/n)-IIIIMachine 10SCIIIIISourceSCIIIIIHours on load[h]0IIIIHours on load[h]0IIIIHours on load[h]0IIIIHours on load[h]0IIIIHours on load[h]500IIIIActive(y/n)-IIIIIActive(y/n)-IIIIIHours on load[h]0IIIIIPreset (maintenance in- interval)[h]0IIIIPreset (maintenance in- interval)[h]500IIIIPreset (maintenance in- interval)[h]500IIIIIActive <td>Name</td> <td></td> <td>Factory setting</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>	Name		Factory setting				
Active(y/n)-IIIIMachine 9SourceISCIIITotal hoursIh10IIIHours on loadIh10IIIIIPreset (maintenance in- terval)Ih1500IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII	Remaining (maintenance interval)	[h]	500				
Machine 9 Source IC SC IC IC IC Total hours [h] 0 IC IC IC Hours on load [h] 0 IC IC IC Preset (maintenance interval) IC SOO IC IC IC Remaining (maintenance interval) IC SOO IC IC IC Active (y/n) - IC IC IC IC Active (y/n) - IC IC IC IC Active (y/n) - IC IC IC IC Machine 10 IC IC IC IC IC IC Freset (maintenance interval) In 0 IC IC IC Active (y/n) - IC IC IC IC Source SC IC IC IC IC IC Hours on load [h] 500 IC IC IC IC Preset (maintenance interval)	Active	(y/n)	_				
SourceSCSCImage: section of the secti	Machine 9			1			
Total hours [h] 0 Image: constraint of the state of the sta	Source		SC				
Hours on load[h]0Image: constraint of the state of th	Total hours	[h]	0				
Preset (maintenance in- terval)[h]500IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII	Hours on load	[h]	0				
Remaining (maintenance interval)[h]500IIActive(y/n)-IIIActive(y/n)-IIIMachine 10SourceSCIIITotal hours[h]0IIHours on load[h]0IIPreset (maintenance in- terval)[h]500IIRemaining (maintenance interval)[h]500IIActive(y/n)-IIIMachine 11SourceSCIIISourceSCIIIIHours on load[h]0IIIPreset (maintenance in- terval)[h]500IIIHours on load[h]0IIIPreset (maintenance in- terval)[h]500IIIRemaining (maintenance in- terval)[h]500IIIActive(y/n)-IIIIActive(y/n)-IIIIActive(y/n)-IIIIActive(y/n)-IIIIActive(y/n)-IIIIActive(y/n)-IIIIActive[h]0IIIIHou	Preset (maintenance in- terval)	[h]	500				
Active (y/n) - Image: constraint of the state	Remaining (maintenance interval)	[h]	500				
Machine 10 Source SC Image: SC	Active	(y/n)	_				
SourceSCSCTotal hours[h]0Image: SCHours on load[h]0Image: SCPreset (maintenance in- terval)[h]500Image: SCRemaining (maintenance interval)[h]500Image: SCActive(y/n)-Image: SCImage: SCMachine 11SCImage: SCImage: SCSourceSCImage: SCImage: SCTotal hours[h]0Image: SCHours on load[h]0Image: SCPreset (maintenance in- terval)[h]500Image: SCRemaining (maintenance in- 	Machine 10			1			
Total hours [h] 0 Image: constraint of the state of the sta	Source		SC			 	
Hours on load [h] 0 Image: constraint of the state of the s	Total hours	[h]	0				
Preset (maintenance in- terval)[h]500Remaining (maintenance interval)[h]500Active(y/n)-Active(y/n)-Machine 11SourceSCTotal hours[h]0Hours on load[h]0Preset (maintenance in- terval)[h]500Remaining (maintenance in- 	Hours on load	[h]	0				
Remaining (maintenance interval)[h]500Image: style styl	Preset (maintenance in- terval)	[h]	500				
Active(y/n)-Image: constraint of the state of the sta	Remaining (maintenance interval)	[h]	500				
Machine 11SourceSCImage: SCTotal hours[h]0Hours on load[h]0Preset (maintenance interval)[h]500Remaining (maintenance interval)[h]500Active(y/n)-Active(y/n)-SourceSCImage: SCTotal hours[h]0Hours on load[h]0Hours on load[h]0Hours on load[h]0Preset (maintenance interval)[h]0	Active	(y/n)	_				
SourceSCSCTotal hours[h]0Image: SCHours on load[h]0Image: SCPreset (maintenance interval)[h]500Image: SCRemaining (maintenance interval)[h]500Image: SCActive(y/n)-Image: SCMachine 12SCImage: SCSourceSCImage: SCTotal hours[h]0Hours on load[h]0Preset (maintenance in-[h]500	Machine 11				-		
Total hours[h]0Image: Constraint of the state of the	Source		SC				
Hours on load[h]0Image: Constraint of the state of th	Total hours	[h]	0				
Preset (maintenance in- terval)[h]500Image: Second se	Hours on load	[h]	0				
Remaining (maintenance interval)[h]500Image: Solution interval)Image: Solution interval)Active(y/n)-Image: Solution image: SolutionImage: Solution image: Soluti	Preset (maintenance in- terval)	[h]	500				
Active(y/n)-Image: Constraint of the state of the sta	Remaining (maintenance interval)	[h]	500				
Machine 12SourceSCTotal hours[h]0Image: Constraint of the second s	Active	(y/n)	_				
SourceSCSCTotal hours[h]0Hours on load[h]0Preset (maintenance in-[h]500	Machine 12						
Total hours[h]0Image: Constraint of the second sec	Source		SC				
Hours on load[h]0Preset (maintenance in-[h]500	Total hours	[h]	0				
Preset (maintenance in- [h] 500	Hours on load	[h]	0				
terval)	Preset (maintenance in- terval)	[h]	500				
Remaining (maintenance [h] 500 [h]	Remaining (maintenance interval)	[h]	500				
Active (y/n) –	Active	(y/n)	_				



NameFactory settingFactory settingMachine 13SourceSCImage: SourceTotal hours[h]0Image: SourceTotal hours[h]0Image: SourceRemaining (maintenance in- terval)[h]500Image: SourceRemaining (maintenance interval)[h]500Image: SourceActive(y/n)-Image: SourceSourceSCImage: SourceImage: SourceTotal hours[h]0Image: SourceTotal hours[h]0Image: SourceTotal hours[h]500Image: SourceTotal hours[h]500Image: SourcePreset (maintenance in- terval)[h]500Remaining (maintenance in- interval)[h]500Remaining (maintenance in- interval)[h]500Remaining (maintenance in- interval)[h]500SourceSCImage: SourceSource[h]500Remaining (maintenance in- interval)[h]0Image: SourceImage: SourceSource[h]SourceTotal hours[h]0Image: Source[h]SourceRemaining (maintenance in- interval)[h]0Image: SourceImage: SourceSource[h]SourceTotal hours[h]SourceRemaining (maintenance in- interval)Image: SourceSourceSCImage:	Date/time							
Machine 13 Source SC Image: SC Image	Name		Factory setting					
Source SC Image: style styl	Machine 13			1	1	1	1	
Total hours [h] 0 Image: constraint of the section o	Source		SC					
Hours on load[h]0Image: state	Total hours	[h]	0					
Preset (maintenance in- terval) [h] 500 Image: second	Hours on load	[h]	0					
Remaining (maintenance interval) In 500 In In In Active (y/n) - In	Preset (maintenance in- terval)	[h]	500					
Active(y/n)-Image: constraint of the sector	Remaining (maintenance interval)	[h]	500					
Machine 14 Source SC Image: SC	Active	(y/n)	_					
SourceSCImage: science scien	Machine 14							
Total hours[h]0Image: constraint of the section of th	Source		SC					
Hours on load [h] 0 Image: constraint of the state of the s	Total hours	[h]	0					
Preset (maintenance in- terval)[h]500Remaining (maintenance interval)[h]500Image: Solution of the solut	Hours on load	[h]	0					
Remaining (maintenance interval)[h]500Image: constraint of the sector of the sect	Preset (maintenance in- terval)	[h]	500					
Active (y/n) – Image: constraint of the state	Remaining (maintenance interval)	[h]	500					
Machine 15 Source SC Image: Constraint of the state o	Active	(y/n)	_					
SourceSCImage: science scien	Machine 15	1		1	1	1	1	
Total hours[h]0Image: constraint of the section of th	Source		SC					
Hours on load[h]0Image: constraint of the state of th	Total hours	[h]	0					
Preset (maintenance in- terval)[h]500Image: Constraint of the second secon	Hours on load	[h]	0					
Remaining (maintenance interval)[h]500Image: Source interval)Image: Source image: SourceSourceSSCImage: SourceSourceSCImage: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceTotal hours[h]0Image: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceHours on load[h]0Image: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourcePreset (maintenance interval)[h]500Image: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceRemaining (maintenance interval)[h]500Image: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceActive(y/n)-Image: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceActive(y/n)-Image: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceRemaining (maintenance[h]SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceActive(y/n)-Image: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceActive(y/n)-Image: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceRemaining (maintenance(y/n)-Image: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceRemaining (maintenance(y/n)-Image: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceRemaining (maintenance(y/n)-Image: SourceImage: SourceImage: SourceRemaining (maintenance(y/n)-Ima	Preset (maintenance in- terval)	[h]	500					
Active(y/n)-Image: Constraint of the sector	Remaining (maintenance interval)	[h]	500					
Machine 16SourceSCImage: SCTotal hours[h]0Image: SCHours on load[h]0Image: SCPreset (maintenance interval)[h]500Image: SCRemaining (maintenance [h]500Image: SCImage: SCActive(y/n)-Image: SCImage: SC	Active	(y/n)	_					
SourceSCSCImage: Constraint of the state	Machine 16							
Total hours[h]0Image: Constraint of the state of the	Source		SC					
Hours on load[h]0Image: Constraint on the sector of the s	Total hours	[h]	0					
Preset (maintenance in- terval)[h]500Image: Comparison of the comparison	Hours on load	[h]	0					
Remaining (maintenance interval)[h]500Image: Solution of the second	Preset (maintenance in- terval)	[h]	500					
Active (y/n) – (Remaining (maintenance interval)	[h]	500					
	Active	(y/n)	_					

Tab. 128 Operating hours and maintenance intervals



С

Γ

13.4 Machine settings

13.4.1 Setting the pressure regulation (pressure controller in series with the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 load output)

See instructions in chapter 6.13.3

Recommended settings for machines with an "external load control" actuating input [psig]

- The reference point is the maximum working pressure
- Adjust the setting values for the pressure regulation (pressure switch (-B1) or system pressure) as follows:

Machine number	ON pr	essure	OFF pressure						
Maximum working pressur	e 14.5 psig to 36 p	osig:							
Machine 1/5	ON	- 0.10	OFF	+ 0.05					
Machine 2/6	ON	- 0.15	OFF	+ 0.05					
Machine 3/7	ON	- 0.20	OFF	+ 0.05					
Machine 4/8	ON	- 0.25	OFF	+ 0.05					
Maximum working pressure 36 psig to 87 psig:									
Machine 1/5	ON	- 0.2	OFF	+ 0.2					
Machine 2/6	ON	- 0.4	OFF	+ 0.2					
Machine 3/7	ON	- 0.6	OFF	+ 0.2					
Machine 4/8	ON	- 0.8	OFF	+ 0.2					
Maximum working pressur	e 87 psig to 232 p	sig:	·						
Machine 1/5	ON	- 0.4	OFF	+ 0.3					
Machine 2/6	ON	- 0.7	OFF	+ 0.3					
Machine 3/7	ON	- 1.0	OFF	+ 0.3					
Machine 4/8	ON	– 1.3	OFF	+ 0.3					
Maximum working pressur	e 232 psig to 464	psig:							
Machine 1/5	ON	- 4.0	OFF	+ 1.0					
Machine 2/6	ON	- 5.0	OFF	+ 1.0					
Machine 3/7	ON	- 6.0	OFF	+ 1.0					
Machine 4/8	ON	- 7.0	OFF	+ 1.0					
Machine 4/8	ON	- 7.0	OFF	+ 1.0					

Tab. 129 Recommended settings: Pressure controller in series with SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 "external load control" load output

Recommended settings for machines with the "Man/Auto"/ "Load/Idle" operating mode" control input [psig]



- The reference point is the maximum working pressure
- Adjust the setting values for the pressure regulation (pressure switch (-B1) or system pressure) as follows:



13.4 Machine settings

Machine number	ON pressure		OFF pressure					
Maximum working pressure 14.5 psig to 36 psig:								
all	ON	- 0.10	OFF	+ 0.05				
Maximum working pressure 36 psig to 87 psig:								
all	ON	- 0.2	OFF	+ 0.2				
Maximum working pressure 87 psig to 232 psig:								
all	ON	- 0.4	OFF	+ 0.3				
Maximum working pressure 232 psig to 464 psig:								
all	ON	- 4.0	OFF	+ 1.0				

Tab. 130 Recommended settings: Pressure controller in series with the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 "Man/ Auto and Load/Idle" load output

Personal settings

Date and time							
Switching point		ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
	Unit						
Machine 1	[psig]						
Machine 2	[psig]						
Machine 3	[psig]						
Machine 4	[psig]						
Machine 5	[psig]						
Machine 6	[psig]						
Machine 7	[psig]						
Machine 8	[psig]						
Machine 9	[psig]						
Machine 10	[psig]						
Machine 11	[psig]						
Machine 12	[psig]						
Machine 13	[psig]						
Machine 14	[psig]						
Machine 15	[psig]						
Machine 16	[psig]						

Tab. 131 Personal settings: Pressure controller in series with SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 load output

13.4.2 Pressure range for manual operation

To avoid simultaneous cut-in of machines in manual mode, you must set the system pressure p2 and/or system pressure switch -B1.1.



13.4 Machine settings

Suggested setting [psig]:

Machine number	ON pr	essure	OFF pressure					
Maximum working pressur	e 14.5 psig:							
Machine 1/5/9/13	ON	0.93	OFF	1.00				
Machine 2/6/10/14	ON	0.91	OFF	0.98				
Machine 3/7/11/15	ON	0.89	OFF	0.96				
Machine 4/8/12/16	ON	0.87	OFF	0.94				
Maximum working pressure 108.8 psig:								
Machine 1/5/9/13	ON	7.0	OFF	7.5				
Machine 2/6/10/14	ON	6.7	OFF	7.2				
Machine 3/7/11/15	ON	6.4	OFF	6.9				
Machine 4/8/12/16	ON	6.1	OFF	6.6				
Maximum working pressur	e 145 psig:							
Machine 1/5/9/13	ON	9.3	OFF	10.0				
Machine 2/6/10/14	ON	9.0	OFF	9.7				
Machine 3/7/11/15	ON	8.7	OFF	9.4				
Machine 4/8/12/16	ON	8.4	OFF	9.1				
Maximum working pressur	e 188.5 psig:							
Machine 1/5/9/13	ON	12.3	OFF	13.0				
Machine 2/6/10/14	ON	12.0	OFF	12.7				
Machine 3/7/11/15	ON	11.7	OFF	12.4				
Machine 4/8/12/16	ON	11.4	OFF	12.1				
Maximum working pressur	e 362.6 psig:							
Machine 1/5/9/13	ON	22	OFF	25				
Machine 2/6/10/14	ON	21	OFF	24				
Machine 3/7/11/15	ON	20	OFF	23				
Machine 4/8/12/16	ON	19	OFF	22				
Maximum working pressur	e 464.1 psig:							
Machine 1/5/9/13	ON	27	OFF	32				
Machine 2/6/10/14	ON	26	OFF	31				
Machine 3/7/11/15	ON	25	OFF	30				
Machine 4/8/12/16	ON	24	OFF	29				

Tab. 132 Recommended settings: Pressure range for manual operation



13.4 Machine settings

Personal settings

Date and time							
Switching point		ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
	Unit						
Machine 1	[psig]						
Machine 2	[psig]						
Machine 3	[psig]						
Machine 4	[psig]						
Machine 5	[psig]						
Machine 6	[psig]						
Machine 7	[psig]						
Machine 8	[psig]						
Machine 9	[psig]						
Machine 10	[psig]						
Machine 11	[psig]						
Machine 12	[psig]						
Machine 13	[psig]						
Machine 14	[psig]						
Machine 15	[psig]						
Machine 16	[psig]						

Tab. 133 Personal settings: Pressure range for manual operation

13.4.3 System offset for manual mode

tv = time delay for switching machines on after a power failure

Date and time						
Name						
Time delay	tv [s]	tv [s]	tv [s]	tv [s]	tv [s]	tv [s]
Machine 1						
Machine 2						
Machine 3						
Machine 4						
Machine 5						
Machine 6						
Machine 7						
Machine 8						



Date and time						
Name						
Time delay	tv [s]	tv [s]	tv [s]	tv [s]	tv [s]	tv [s]
Machine 9						
Machine 10						
Machine 11						
Machine 12						
Machine 13						
Machine 14						
Machine 15						
Machine 16						

Tab. 134 Personal settings: System offset (manual operation)

13.5 Installation accessories

Communication modules

Description	Material number	Remarks
PROFINET IO retrofit kit	7.5250.01920	Communication module with accessories for installa-
PROFIBUS DP-V0 Retro- fit Kit	7.5250.01880	tion by user. Can be retrofitted.
Modbus TCP retrofit kit	7.5250.01950	
EtherNet/IP retrofit	7.5250.02090	

Tab. 135 Communication modules

SIGMA NETWORK

Description	Material number	Remarks
Line SIGMA NETWORK	7.9679.0	CAT5 2x2x0.64 gr, for indoor installation, PVC coating, grey, \varnothing 0.3 in., by the yard
Stripping tool	8.8294.0	Ethernet cable stripping tool
RJ45 bus connector	7.7628.1	RJ45 plug, 4 insulation displacement/clamp- ing contacts, tool-free installation (fast con- nect)
LAN RJ45 retrofit kit	7.5250.01870	RJ45 bus connector, screw fittings, accessories



13.5 Installation accessories

Description	Material number	Remarks
Fiber optic cable with plugs and in- sertion tool		Fiber optic cable Duplex ST/ST, multi-mode G50/125OM2, insertion tool on both sides; assembled cable, yard ware up to 3280 yd
	7.9677.0	Indoor installation
	7.9677.00010	Outdoor installation

Tab. 136 SIGMA NETWORK installation accessories

Pressure transducer

Description	Material number		Pressure range
	With plug	Without plug	
For Type I	7.4599.0		0–14.5 psig
For Type II	7.3397.1		0–87 psig
	7.2816.3		0–145 psig
	7.6689.0		0–464 psig
	7.4773.0		0–652 psig
For Type III	7.7040E3	7.7040.3	0–232 psig
	7.7044E1	7.7044.1	0–362 psig
	—	7.7042.1	0–464 psig
For vacuum	7.7046.0	7.7041.2	0–750 "Hg (absolute)

Tab. 137 Pressure transducer

Pressure transducer accessories

Description	Material number	Remarks
Angle plug Form A	7.1344.0	For pressure transducer
Fitting set straight, elbow, G 1/4, G1/2 with shut-off valve and accessories up to 232 psig	8.0484.10050	For air receiver connection
Fitting set straight, elbow, G 1/4, G1/2 with shut-off valve and accessories up to 653 psig	8.0484.00090	For air receiver connection
Fitting set G 1/4, G1/2 with shut-off valve and accessories up to 218 psig	204465.0	1–liter air receiver for connection to pipework
Connecting cable for pressure transducer	7.2679.0	Screened, 2 x 18 AWG, for indoor installation, PVC sheath, grey, 0.24 in. diameter

Tab. 138 Pressure transducer accessories



13.6 Exchanging the battery

PROFIBUS installation parts and cable

Description	Material number	Remarks
Connecting cable for PROFIBUS	7.4666.0	Screened, 1x2x0.64/2.55, for indoor installation, PVC sheath. violet, 0.3 in. diameter
PROFIBUS connector plug for SIGMA AIR MANAGER	7.4664.20010	35° cable outlet
PROFIBUS plug set for SIGMA CONTROL	7.5250.00300	For PG and M cable glands including EMC glands
PROFIBUS DP communication module set for SIGMA CONTROL 2	7.5250.01880	Module, bus connector, fittings

Tab. 139 PROFIBUS installation accessories

Modules for load-idle control

Description	Pressure	Part number	Remarks
Module for external load/idle control (7.7005.1 or 7.7005.2)	115 psig 160 psig 217 psig	7.7006.00003 7.7006.00013 7.7006.00023	Digital input for load control via SIGMA AIR MANAGER. For machines with SIGMA CONTROL BASIC (7.7005.1 or 7.7005.2) without frequency converter.
SFC module with exter- nal load/idle control	115 psig	7.7706.00033	Like 7.7006.00003 but for machines with variable frequency drive (SFC)
Module for external load/idle control (7.7005.3)	115 psig 160 psig 217 psig	7.7056.00002 7.7056.00012 7.7056.00022	Digital input for load control via SIGMA AIR MANAGER. For machines with SIGMA CONTROL BASIC (7.7005.3) without frequency converter.
SFC module with exter- nal load/idle control	115 psig	7.7056.00035	Like 7.7056.00002 but for machines with fre- quency converter (SFC)

Tab. 140 Load/idle modules

RC suppressor

Description	Material number	Remarks
RC suppressor	7.2812.1	For suppression of inductive loads connected to the relay outputs of the master controller. Coil voltage: 110–230 V AC/DC Coil retention capacity: 15 VA

Tab. 141 RC suppressor

13.6 Exchanging the battery

Exchanging the battery		
Date/time		



Exchanging the battery		
Name		

Tab. 142 Changing the battery

13.7 Electrical Diagram



13.7 Electrical Diagram

,							•
-	2	3	4	5	9	1	œ
				Wiring Dia	jram		
				SIGMA AIF	R MANAGEMENT	SYSTEM	
				SIGMA AIF	R MANAGER 4.0		
				manufacturer:	KAESER COMPRES	SSORS	
					96450 COBURG GERMANY		
The drawings r only for the agr	remain our exclusive property. They are entr treed purpose. Copies or any other reproduct	trusted ztions,					
including stora electronic syste	age, treatment and dissemination by use of tems must not be made for any other than the	ē					
agreed purpos forwarded or o	se. Neither originals nor reproductions must t otherwise made accessible to third parties.	đ					
0	Date 08.03.2021 USE			cover page		п	
q	Drawn Sitter			SIGMA AIR MANAG	iER 4.0	+	
A Change Date	Name Voerenuer					DWASAM2-U3000.05	page 1 1 Sht.

Lfd. Nr.	Benennung	-		Zeichnungsnummer (Kunde)	Zeichnungsnummer (Hersteller)	Blatt	Anlagenkennzeichen	
No.	Name			Drawing No. (customer)	Drawing No. (manufacturer)	Page	Unit designation	
-	cover page	_			DWASAM2-U3000.05	-		
2	list of conte	ants			ZWASAM2-U3000.05	+		
с,	general inst	tructions / electrica	equipment identification		UWASAM2-U3000.05	-		
4	electrical cc	omponent parts list			UWASAM2-U3000.05	2		
5	block diagra	am	SIGMA NETWORK		UWASAM2-U3000.05	m		
9	block diagra	am	PROFIBUS DP		UWASAM2-U3000.05	4		
7	block diagra	am	Conventionally controlled maschines		UWASAM2-U3000.05	5		
∞	interconnec	ction diagram			UWASAM2-U3000.05	9		
6	wiring diagr	ram	power supply		SWASAM2-U3000.05	-		
10	wiring diagr	am	power supply / Bus Controller		SWASAM2-U3000.05	2		
±	wiring diagr	Tam	diaital inputs		SWASAM2-U3000.05	m		
12	wiring diagr	am	digital outputs		SWASAM2-U3000.05	4		
13	wiring diagr	'am	analog inputs		SWASAM2-U3000.05	5		
14	wiring diagr	'am	Potential distributor		SWASAM2-U3000.05	9		
15	wiring diagr	Tam	control		SWASAM2-U3000.05	7		
16	wiring diagr	ram	1.Switch / option E10		SWASAM2-U3000.05	8		
17	wiring diagr	ram	1.Switch / option E12 without E10		SWASAM2-U3000.05	6		
18	wiring diagr	'am	2.switch / option E10 without E12		SWASAM2-U3000.05	10		
19	wiring diagr	'am	2.switch / option E12		SWASAM2-U3000.05	11		
20	wiring diagr	am	converter / option E1		SWASAM2-U3000.05	12		
21	wiring diagr	'am	volt-free contacts		SWASAM2-U3000.05	13		
22	wiring diagr	ram	connection variants		SWASAM2-U3000.05	14		
23	wiring diagr	am	connection variants		SWASAM2-113000.05	15		
24	wiring diag	me				<u>6</u> 4		
25	wiring diag	me:	Vortification variants Handling terminals		SWASAM2-113000.05	17		
3 %			maine voltane 100.240V 60H+					
N 6						- c		
.71	lay-out		mains voltage 24V DC		AWASAM2-U3000.05	2		
0		Date	08.03.2021	list of contents			"	
p		Drawn	Sitter	SIGMA AIR MANA	GEB 4 0		+	
8		Released	Oberender			i	page 1	
						-		

KOMPR

Electrical Diagram



13.7 Electrical Diagram

-	6	er.	γ	Ľ	c	7	œ	
general instru ATTENTION !!! Install supplies, gro to local safety regul Do not make or bre live plug-in connect	uctions Junding and shock Jations.	protection		control cabinet wiring for non-d with multi-standard stranded co primary circuits ungrounded: control voltage DC ungrounded primary circuits grounded: control voltage DC grounded: ground conductor:	esignated conductors inductors black : blue 1mm ² H05V-K, 18AWG grey white/blue 1mm ² H05V-K, 18, green/yellow H07V-K, UL-Sty	UL-Style 1015, CSA-TE AWG UL-Style 1015, C	EW SA-TEW	
option E1 option E10 option E12 option E19	 PROFIE Ports R. Ports R. Single n 	3US Master J45: SIGMA NETWORK J45/ FOC: SIGMA NETWORK node FOC		option C41 option C42 option C45 option C45 option C50	 = communication = communication = communication = communication 	module PROFIE module Modbus module Modbus module PROFIN module EtherNe	BUS DP s RTU s TCP NET IO et/IP	
A-41 A-41 A-41 A-41 A-41 A-41 A-41 A-41	SIGMA AIR M communication disconnect swi I/O-Module bu I/O-Module dig I/O-Module and I/O-Module and I/O-Module Pot Ethernet Switch coupling relay	ANAGER 4.0 I module tch power supply s Controller wer supply tral outurs tral outurs alog inputs 20mA tential distributor			ntroller ventilator wer unit blocol converter SIGMA NETWORK bles SIGMA NETWORK minal strip power supply minal strip control 24VDC	- PROFIBUS DP	 	
	Date 08.03.2021 Drawn Sitter			Beneral instructions / electrons / sectrons sectrons / sectrons / sectrons / sectrons /	cal equipment identification			
a Date Name	Released Oberender		KOWPR			UWASAM2-I	U3000.05	page 1 6 Sht.



13 Annex

13.7 Electrical Diagram

		electrical compo	nent parts list		5	6 Sht.
madal		SIGMA AIR MAN	NAGER 4.0		page	
machine power supp	ly	100-240 V ±10 %, 80 HZ	24 V I 10 %, DC		¥	ç Ö
supply terminals	-X1:U1/N/L+/L-		2x 7.3149.02600		" + C	2000
	-X1:GRD	2x 7 3149 01850	2x 7 3149 01850			Š.
	Wieland	WKFN 4 D2/2/SL/35	WKEN 4 D2/2/SL/35			NNNN NNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNN
	Stripped length	11 mm	11 mm			5
	Handling	fig. 2, Sht. 17	fig. 2, Sht. 17			Ž
terminals	-X10	2x 7.3149.02620	2x 7.3149.02620		-	ر
	Wieland	WKFN 2.5 E1/2/VB/35	WKFN 2.5 E1/2/VB/35			
	rianuling		lig. 1, Onc. 17			
sequencer	-A1	7.9696P2	7.9696P2			
	Prodrive	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0			
communication modu	ule -A1-X1	7.7606.00060	7.7606.00060			
PROFINET IO (option	n C45) HMS	AB6506-B	AB6506-B			
Modbus TCP (option	C44) HMS	AB6455-B	AB6455-B			
communication modu	ule -A1-X1	7.7606.00040	7.7606.00040			
PROFIBUS DP (optic	on C41) HMS	AB6426-B	AB6426-B			
communication modu	ule -A1-X1	7.7606.00010	7.7606.00010			
Modbus RTU (option	C42) HMS	AB6429-B	AB6429-B		4.0	
Communication modu	ле -A1-X1 (50) име	1.1000.00010 AB6946-C	AB6946-C		ER	
	Givin (Soo)			I	dGl aGl	
I/O-Module	- K 1	7.9631.0	7.9631.0		AN,	
Bus Controller	B&R	X20BC0087-C01	X20BC0087-C01		S M	
I/O-Module	-K1-X0	7.9631.00010	7.9631.00010		AIF	
power supply	B&R	X20PS9400	X20PS9400		WA cal o	
I/O-Module	-K1-X1	7.9631.00020	7.9631.00020		lectri IGI	
I/O-Module	-K1-X2	7 9631 00030	7 9631 00030		0	_
6DOT	B&R	X20DO6322	X20DO6322			
I/O-Module	-K1-X3	7.9631.00041	7.9631.00041		Шщ	
4 All	B&R	X20Al4632-1	X20AI4632-1			
I/O-Module	-K1-X4	7.9631.00090	7.9631.00090		ΠH	
Potential distributor		7 9630 0	7 9630 0		. 4	
lower part	B&R	X20BB80	X20BB80		Cō	
I/O-Module	-K1-X1X4	7.9630.00010	7.9630.00010			
lower part	B&R	X20BM11	X20BM11			
I/O-Module	-K1-X0X4	7.9632.0	7.9632.0			
terminal block	B&R	X201B12	X201B12			
Switch R.I45	-K10 -K11	7 9662 0	7 9662 0			
option E10	Wieland	WIENET UMS 8	WIENET UMS 8			
Switch RJ45 / FOC	-K10, -K11	7.9663.0	7.9663.0			
option E12 without E	19 Wieland	WIENET UMS 4-1FM	WIENET UMS 4-1FM			\vdash
Switch RJ45 / FOC	-K10, -K11	7.9663.00010	7.9663.00010			
	vvieland _T10	7 9661 1	7 9661 1			
option E1	Hilscher	NT100-RE-DP/KAES	NT100-RE-DP/KAES			
			•			
cables	-W80W83	7.7818.1	7.7818.1			
	Weidmüller	LSZH grey 0.5m	LSZH grey 0.5m			
disconnect switch	_F1	7.3140.05110	7,3140,05110			+
	Siemens	5SJ4203-8HG41	5SJ4203-8HG41			
power supply	-T1	7.9665.1			jer 221	
	Wieland	WIPOS P1 24-2.5	7.0/70.0001		3.03.21 tter berenc	
coupling relay	-K21K25	7.3172.00310	7.3172.00310		<u> </u>	+
	Phoenix Handling	клU-КРТ-24DG/21 fig. 3. Sht. 17	KIF-U-KP1-24DG/21		2	
controller ventilator	-M1	7.9660.0	7.9660.0)rawn keleas	
	Rübsamen&Herr	614NGML-283	614NGML-283			t
Fan safety guard	-M1	7.9660.00010	7.9660.00010			Vame
	Rübsamen&Herr	BG80	BG80			f
forrit h!		7 4800 00070	7 4000 00070			Date
hinged	Würth	7.4890.00070	7.4890.00070 74271112			Ē
ferrit bead	wuidt	7.4890.00020	7.4890.00020		———————————————————————————————————————	
closed	Würth	74270081	74270081			bil
						Cha
					0 0 0	10



13.7 **Electrical Diagram**

Annex

13

User Manual SIGMA AIR MANAGEMENT SYSTEM SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 ≥ sam4.0_1.12.X



13

Annex

 $\label{eq:userManual} \begin{array}{ll} \mbox{SIGMA AIR MANAGEMENT SYSTEM} \\ \mbox{SIGMA AIR MANAGER } 4.0 \geq \mbox{sam4.0_1.12.X} \end{array}$


Annex







No.: 901735 10 USE



 $\label{eq:sermanual} \begin{array}{ll} \mbox{SIGMA AIR MANAGEMENT SYSTEM} \\ \mbox{SIGMA AIR MANAGER } 4.0 \geq \mbox{sam4.0_1.12.X} \end{array}$

















Annex

User Manual SIGMA AIR MANAGEMENT SYSTEM SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 ≥ sam4.0_1.12.X



























13 Annex



Annex



Annex

 $\label{eq:sermanual} \begin{array}{ll} \mbox{SIGMA AIR MANAGEMENT SYSTEM} \\ \mbox{SIGMA AIR MANAGER } 4.0 \geq \mbox{sam4.0_1.12.X} \end{array}$















13.8 I/O block 6DI & 6DOT & 4 All with relays

Enter the wiring information of the actual application into the following tables.



Sample entry in assignment table

Input	Termi	inal		Line	Destination	Application
DI 1.1	-	¥	7	W7625 2x 16 AWG: 1	Compressor 3 -X1:25	Motor running K3
	+24V	¥	4	W7625 2x 16 AWG: 2	Compressor 3 -X1:26	Motor running K3
DOT 2.1	-	X2	7	1x1 mm ² : SM	-K21: A1	Internal wiring
	GND	X2	4	1x1 mm ² : SM	-K21: A2	Internal wiring
All 3.1	+	X3		W4713 2x 16 AWG: BN	DHS -X1:19	Pressure from air main charging system
	÷	X3	13	W4713 2x 16 AWG: SW	DHS -X1:20	
	+24V	X4	21			
	GND	X4	7			
Relay -K21			A1	1x1 mm²: SM	-K1-X2: 11	Internal wiring
			A2	1x1 mm ² : SM	-K1-X2: 14	Internal wiring
	8		7	W4633 3G 16 AWG: BN	Compressor 3 -X3: 18	C3 load
	NC		12			
	Q		4	W4633 3G 16 AWG: SM	Compressor 3 -X3: 19	C3 load

Tab. 143 Sample entry in assignment table I/O block with relays



Module 1: X1 DI1.x



Tab. 144 Assignment I/O block - Module 1: X1 DI1.x - 20DI6371 - 6x DI 24VDC



Module 2: X2 DOT2.x (wiring when shipped)

Application	Internal wiring	Internal wiring	Internal wiring	Internal wiring				Internal wiring		Internal wiring	Internal wiring				Internal wiring	
Destination	-K21: A1	-K21: A2	-K1-X2: 11	-K1-X2: 14				-K22: A1		-K1-X2: 21	-K21: A2				-K23: A1	
Line	1x1 mm²: SM	1x1 mm²: SM	1x1 mm²: SM	1x1 mm²: SM				1x1 mm²: SM		1x1 mm²: SM	Wire jumper				1x1 mm²: SM	
	7	14	A1	A2	7	12	14	21	24	A1	A2	7	12	14	12	15
nal	X2	X2						X2	X2						X2	X
Termi		GND			S	S	Q	7	GND			S	S	Q	e	GND
Input	DOT 2.1		Relay -K21					DOT 2.2		Relay -K22					DOT 2.3	



ion	wiring	wiring				wiring		wiring	wiring				wiring	
Applicat	Internal	Internal				nternal		Internal	Internal				nternal	
Destination	-K1-X2: 12	-K21: A2				-K24: A1		-K1-X2: 22	-K21: A2				-K25: A1	
Line	1x1 mm²: SM	Wire jumper				1×1 mm²: SM		1x1 mm²: SM	Wire jumper				1x1 mm²: SM	
	A1	A2	5	12	14	22	25	A1	A2	1	12	14	13	16
linal						X4	X4						X5	X5
Term			00	S	Q	4	GND			с С	S	Q	5	GND
Input	Relay -K23					DOT 2.4		Relay -K24					DOT 2.5	

AESER OMPRESSOREN	13 13.0	Ar 3 1/0	nne bloc	2 X 2k 6[3 IC	6D(OT & 4	All with	ı relays	;
		ing	ing				ing		ing	

Application	Internal wiring	Internal wiring				Internal wiring		Internal wiring	Internal wiring			
Destination	-K1-X2: 13	-K21: A2				SBU: -K26: A1 SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0: Control cabinet fan	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0: Control cabinet fan	-K1-X2: 23	-K21: A2			
Line	1x1 mm²: SM	Wire jumper				1x1 mm²: SM	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0: 1x1 mm²: SM	1x1 mm²: SM	Wire jumper			
	A1	A2	7	12	4	23	26	A1	A2	7	12	4
lal						X6	X6					
Termin			20	NC	Q	Q	GND			30	NC	Q
Input	Relay -K25					DOT 2.6		SBU: Re- lay -K26				

Tab. 145 Assignment I/O block – Module 2: X2 DOT2.x – X20DO6322 – 6x relays



Modules 3 & 4: X3 & X4 All3.x



Tab. 146 Assignment I/O block Modules 3 & 4 – X3 & X4 AII3.x – X20AI4632-1 – 4x AII 0-22mA 16Bit & X20PD2113



Hub

13.9 Hub

Enter the wiring information of the actual application into the following table. If you require more than table, please use this table to create photocopies.

Destination

Switch: K	
Input	Conductor
Port 1	
Port 2	

FUILZ	
Port 3	
Port 4	
Port 5	
Port 6	
Port 7	
Port 8	

Tab. 147 Switch allocation

Switch: K		
Input	Conductor	Destination
Port 1		
Port 2		
Port 3		
Port 4		
Port 5		
Port 6		
Port 7		
Port 8		

Tab. 148 Switch allocation

Term	Meaning
"ADA"	Abbreviation for: "Air Demand Analysis". KAESER-specific format for the export of data that SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 has collec- ted when controlling the compressed air station.
"Current values"	The display of current measurement data for the entire station or selected machine(s).
"Automatic"	Operating mode in which SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 assumes control of the compressed air station.
"Required pressure"	The demand pressure is the minimum pressure needed by con- sumers in the compressed air system.



Term	Meaning
"Observation"	If a user logs in with "Logged out" access mode, the system switches to the "Monitor" log-in status. The user is then logged on in read-only mode and can display all menus and check the set- tings.
"Configuration"	If a user logs in with "Monitor" access mode, the system switches to the "Operate" log-in status. The user is then logged on in read and write mode and can change settings.
"Operating state"	 Operating states of compressors and blowers: READY IDLE ON LOAD
AMCS (referred to as 'DHS' for Kaeser equipment)	Abbreviation for: "Air-main charging system."
"Pressure display"	Large numerical pressure display of "Network pressure". This display type is easy to read even from far away.
Pressure performance	The system calculates the pressure performance over a defined in- terval as the percentage of time with network pressure >= required pressure.
"Air-main charging system (DHS)"	The air-main charging system is a device designed for the relief of the compressed air treatment facility when an empty compressed air network is being filled. This prevents problems in the com- pressed air treatment equipment caused by excessive compressed air flow rate through the equipment.
"Pressure curve"	The pressure curve is the visual display of the network pressure progression and the selected limits for the entire station or the selected machines.
"Compressed air consumption"	Calculated current compressed air usage in the compressed air network.
Pressure range	The pressure range is the difference between the pressure range limit and the required pressure.
"Pressure range limit"	The pressure range limit is the maximum permissible pressure in the compressed air station. This value may be specified by the compressed air consumer or the compressed air station.
"Pressure transducer"	Sensor for measuring the pressure (relative, absolute or differential pressure). The sensor is available for different pressure measuring ranges and converts pressure into an electric signal.
"Variable speed"	When a "frequency converter" is used, the fixed system AC voltage is converted to an AC voltage with variable frequency. This changes the speed of AC motors and as a result, the flow rate of the machine.
"Engineering Base"	"Engineering Base" is a central KAESER planning tool. It gener- ates configuration files to be imported into SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.



Term	Meaning
Ethernet	The X7 "interface" connects the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 to the customer's data network. This connection can be used to remotely access the user interface of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 via "KAESER CONNECT". In addition, SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is linked to the KAESER IoT client, control technology and the Intranet/Internet.
Remote control	Remote control of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 from a central con- trol center.
"FOC"	Abbreviation for: fiber optic components . Component for signal transmission via light waves. Used in SIGMA NETWORK for the accurate transmission of data over longer distances with immunity from electromagnetic interference.
"Frequency converter" (FC)	Converts incoming current to produce alternating current of variable frequency and amplitude to operate electrical equipment.
Manual	Operating mode in which the machines use their internal pressure control. This mode may be required during a SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 "software update" for example.
"History"	Display of maximum, average and minimum pressure values and other derived values.
IOM	Abbreviation for: "Input/output modules". Machine control modules with digital and analog input/output ports for SIGMA CONTROL 2 machine control.
"KAESER CONNECT"	The user interface of SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 can be displayed on an Internet-enabled device (PC, laptop, tablet, etc.).
"KAESER IoT Client"	The KAESER IoT client is a data transmission component for SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0. It is positioned between SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 and the KAESER DATA CENTER and transfers the data from the compressed air station via a secure VPN con- nection.
Configuration	 Settings that can be made directly on the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 terminal.
	 Data from the Engineering Base output that is imported into SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 and used to control the customer- specific compressed air station.
"Alive message"	SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 features an option for sending a daily e-mail message stating "Alive message" at a pre-selected time. This message confirms that SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 is in oper- ation and that the e-mail function is working.
"Control technology"	Central control and monitoring station. SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 can be controlled remotely via a communications module (X1 interface).
Messages – Active	Displays a list of system messages sorted chronologically, with the most recent messages at the top.
Messages – History	List of the last 1000 messages sorted chronologically.



Term	Meaning
Messages – Unacknowledged	New messages not yet acknowledged by the operator. You can highlight individual messages and acknowledge them by selecting «Acknowledge message». This removes the message from the list of unacknowledged messages.
"Network pressure"	Network pressure is the current pressure in the compressed air network as measured by the "pressure transducer".
System pressure too high	"Pressure too high" is a monitoring function. If the monitoring func- tion is activated, the system issues a warning message as soon as the network pressure exceeds the set threshold value.
System pressure too low	"Pressure too low" is a monitoring function. If the monitoring func- tion is activated, the system issues a warning message as soon as the network pressure falls below the set threshold value.
OLM	Abbreviation for: Optical Link Module. See "FOC".
Predictive maintenance	Predictive maintenance as optional service: KAESER SIGMA SMART AIR.
"PROFIBUS"	The Process Field Bus (Profibus) is a field bus communication standard in plant engineering. PROFIBUS devices are connected in series, i.e. one after another. A terminating resistor is required at both ends of the wiring.
Pt100	Platinum sensor for temperature measurement. A change in temperature causes a precisely measurable change in the platinum sensor's resistance. A Pt100 sensor has a 100 Ohm resistance at 32 °F.
"P&I diagram"	Piping and instrument flow chart in plant and process engineering. The P&I diagram symbolically displays all devices required for the station operation, such as:
	 Compressors
	■ Blowers
	 Containers
	 Separators
	Filters
	 Valves
	Fans/ventilators
	Coolers
	Piping
	Actuators
	Sensors
"RFID"	Abbreviation for: Radio Frequency identification. Non-contacting and reliable identification technology. Consists of a reader and a chip card or chip.
SAM	SIGMA AIR MANAGER. KAESER first-generation master control- ler for the energy-efficient control of compressed air stations with up to 16 compressors.
"SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0"	KAESER master controller for Industry 4.0 for energy-efficient con- trol, monitoring and evaluation of compressed air stations with up to 16 compressors.



13.10 Glossary

Term	Meaning
"SAM 4.0 Logic"	Using SAM 4.0 Logic, you can create programs for the control of machines or devices, similar to a PLC (programmable logic controller).
"SBU"	The SIGMA NETWORK bus converter is an interface expansion for SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0. A SBU is connected via SIGMA NETWORK to SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.
SCS	Abbreviation for: "SIGMA CONTROL SMART".
SIGMA CONTROL SMART	Machine controller for, e.g. KAESER dryers.
SD card	Digital storage medium. An SD card can be inserted in the SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0 using the X3 card slot. This can be used for control data storage, software updates and for importing configuration data from the Engineering Base.
SFC	Abbreviation for: SIGMA Frequency Converter: see "Frequency converter".
SIGMA CONTROL 2	Machine controller for KAESER compressors and blowers.
"SIGMA NETWORK"	KAESER-specific network based on Modbus TCP for controlling compatible KAESER machines. The devices are connected to SIGMA NETWORK in a star set-up.
SNW	Abbreviation for: "SIGMA NETWORK".
"Specific power"	The required electric power that is required for compressing a vol- ume unit per time unit.
PLC	Abbreviation for: programmable logical controller. See "SAM 4.0 Logic".
"Station"	Compressed air station consisting of compressed air machines and components.
ADT	Compressed air is heated during the compression process. The airend discharge temperature (ADT) is the compression temperature at the compressed air outlet, measured directly at the airend.
VPN	Abbreviation for: virtual private network: private computer network that uses a public network infrastructure.
Volumetric flow rate	The rate of compressed air delivery for the entire station or the se- lected machine.
"Timer control"	Using the time control, you can set timers for various compressed air station parameters (e.g. "Required pressure" or air delivery ON/ OFF). The time control is configured locally at SIGMA AIR MANAGER 4.0.

Tab. 149 Glossary

